

Owner's Manual

2023 TT

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

OwnersManuals2.com

OwnersManuals2.com

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. Audi recommends that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, there are many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. Audi also gives you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Audi hopes you enjoy driving your vehicle and wishes you safe and pleasant motoring.

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

About this Owner's Manual 5

Summary 6
Quick access 6
Cockpit overview 6
Indicator lights overview 7

Display and operation 10
Instrument cluster 10
Instrument cluster overview 10
Coolant temperature indicator 10
Tachometer 11
Odometer 11
Outside temperature display 11
Fuel level 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Vehicle functions 15
Messages 16

Starting and driving 18
Opening and closing 18
Central locking 18
Luggage compartment lid 25
Power windows 27
Garage door opener 29

Power top 32
Automatic power top 32
Wind deflector 34
Power top emergency operation 34

Lights and Vision 37
Exterior lighting 37
Interior lighting 40
Vision 40
Windshield wipers 42
Digital compass 44

Sitting correctly and safely 46
Correct passenger seating position 46
Front seats 46
Rear seats 49
Steering wheel 49
Safety belts 50
Airbag system 53
Child safety seats 58

Storage and convenience 64
Power sources 64
Cup holders 64
Storage areas and compartments 65
Luggage compartment 65
Roof rack 69

Warm and cold 70
Climate control system 70
Deluxe automatic climate control 71
Adjusting the vents 72
Seat heating 72
Neck heating 73
Fluids in the A/C system 73

Driving 75
General information 75
Starting and stopping the engine 76
Start/Stop system 78
Electromechanical parking brake 80
Starting to drive 81
Automatic transmission 82

Driver assistance 90
Assist systems 90
Speed warning system 90
Cruise control system 90
Lap timer 92
Audi side assist 94
Audi drive select (drive settings) 96

Parking aid 99
Introduction 99
Rear parking system 99
Parking system plus 100
Rearview camera 101
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 103
Error messages 103

Intelligent Technology 105
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
Brakes 107
Steering 108
All wheel drive (quattro) 109
Rear spoiler 109
Energy management 110

OwnersManuals2.com

Infotainment system 111
Multi Media Interface 111
Traffic safety information 111
Introduction 111
MMI On/Off knob with joystick function . . 111
MMI operation 112
MMI touch 113
Control knob with joystick function 116
Letter/number speller 118
Free text search 119
Menus and symbols 120

Voice recognition system 123
General information 122
Operating 123
Command overview information 124
Commands 124

Telephone 129
Introduction 129
Setup 129
Using the Audi phone box 131
Using the telephone 133
Favorites 135
Messages 136
Listening to voicemail 138
Directory 138
Additional settings 140
Troubleshooting 141

Audi connect 142
General information 142
Audi connect Infotainment 142
Using a Wi-Fi hotspot 144
Audi connect Infotainment services 144
Settings 146
Troubleshooting 148

Navigation 149
Opening navigation 149
Entering a destination 150
Home address 155
Favorites 155
Directory contacts 155
Alternative routes 156
Additional settings 156
Map 158
Satellite map 161
Accessing traffic information 162
Troubleshooting 164

Radio 165
Opening the radio 165
Radio functions 165
Radio menu 167
Presets 167
Additional settings 168
Troubleshooting 168

Media 169
Introduction 169
Notes 169
Media drives 170
Bluetooth audio player 172
Wi-Fi audio player 173
Online media and Internet radio 174
Multimedia connections 175
Playing media 177
Additional settings 180
Supported media and file formats 183
Troubleshooting 184

Audi smartphone interface 187
Setup 187
Operating 187
Troubleshooting 188

System settings 189
Setting the date and time 189
MMI settings 189
Connection manager 190
System update 192
Sound settings 193
Volume settings 193
Restarting the MMI 194
Software license information 194

Maintenance and Care 195
Checking and Filling 195
Fuel 195
Refueling 196
Emissions control system 198
Engine compartment 199
Engine oil 202
Cooling system 206
Brake fluid 208

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Electrical system 208
Battery 209
Windshield washer system 211
Service interval display 212

Wheels 213
Wheels and Tires 213
Tire pressure monitoring system 230

Care and cleaning 233
General information 233
Car washes 233
Cleaning and care information 234
Taking your vehicle out of service 239

Do It Yourself 240
Emergency assistance 240
General information 240
Equipment 240
Tire mobility kit 240
Replacing wheels 242
Spare tire 246
Jump starting 246
Towing 248

Fuses and bulbs 251
Fuses 251
Bulbs 253

Customer information 254
Data privacy 254
Privacy notice 254
Image recording 254
Data memories 254
Transmitted information 255

Accessories and technical changes 256
Warranty 256
Audi Literature Shop 256
Driving in other countries 256
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 256
Accessories and parts 258
Reporting Safety Defects 258

Technical data 260
Identification data 260
Vehicle data 260

Other information 262
Brands and licenses 262
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 262

Index 263

OwnersManuals2.com

In this manual, Audi provides important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle. "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the respective importer in a country, as well as joint ventures.

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

KEEP THIS GUIDE

Keep this manual and any other applicable documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** for all model versions of this vehicle at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system". Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk "*".

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear", are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a "WARNING" within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Quick access

Cockpit overview

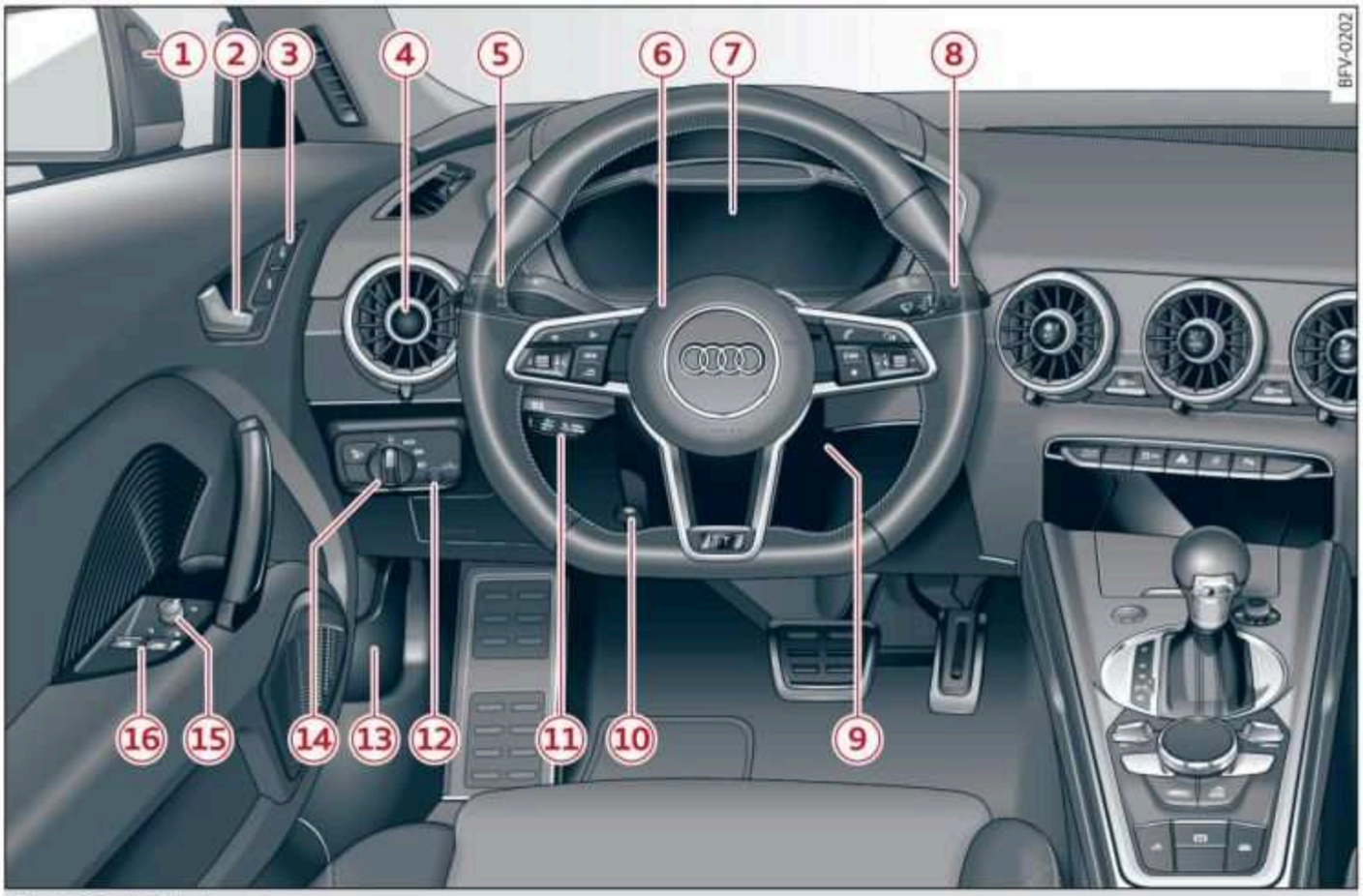


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

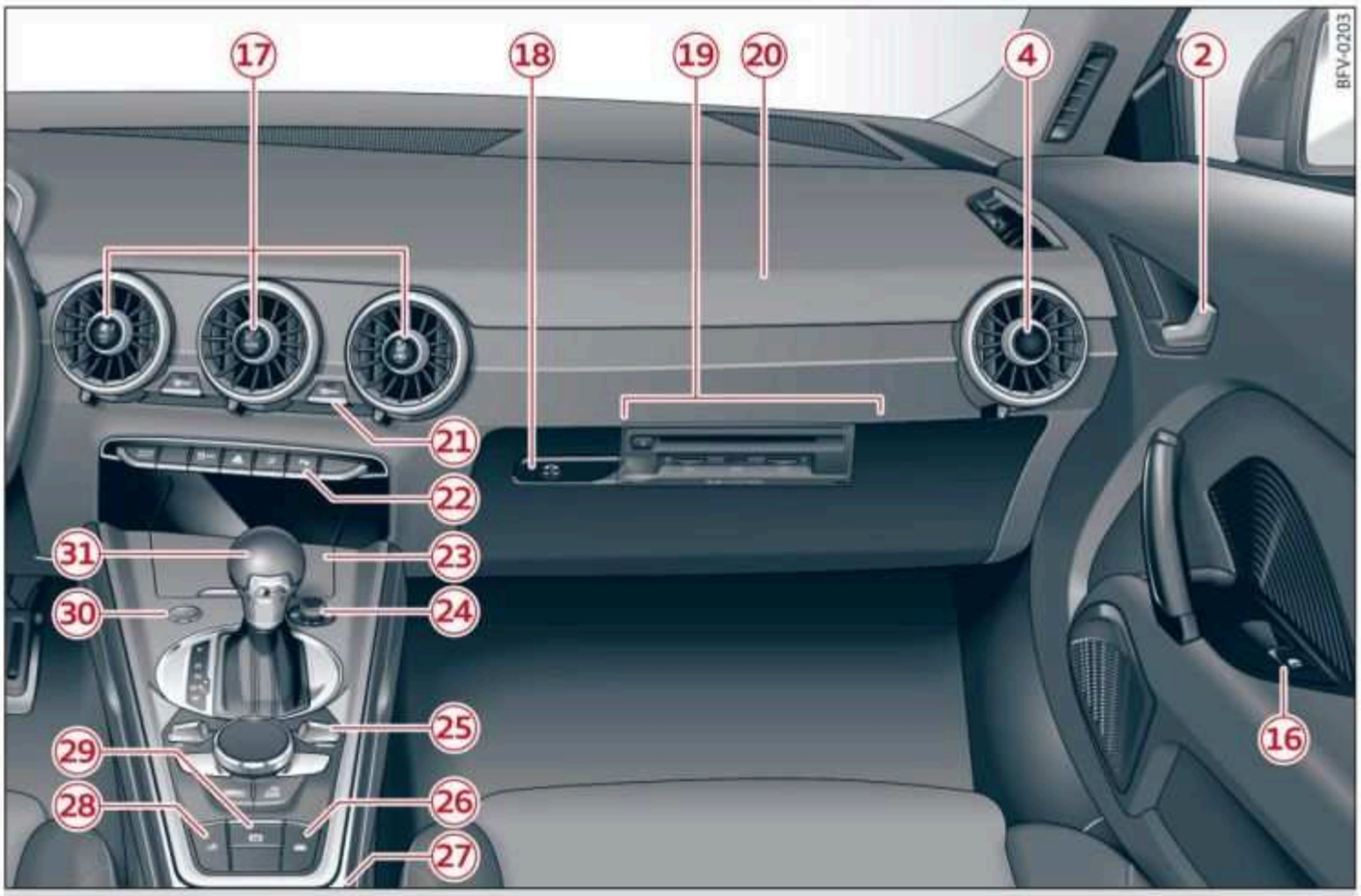


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

OwnersManuals2.com

① Side assist display 94
② Door handle
③ Central locking switch 23
④ Air vent with seat heating controls
⑤ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams 38
⑥ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 53
– Buttons for the virtual instrument cluster, including the driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition system
– Shift paddles 86
⑦ Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 10
⑧ Windshield washer system lever . . 42
⑨ Starting the engine if there is a malfunction 78
⑩ Adjustable steering column 49
⑪ Cruise control lever 90
⑫ Instrument illumination 40
⑬ Hood release 199
⑭ Headlight control switch 37
⑮ Power exterior mirror adjustment . 40
⑯ Power windows 27
⑰ Air vent including climate control system controls 70
⑱ Lockable glove compartment
⑲ Drives for CD, DVD, SIM/SD cards . 170
⑳ Front passenger's airbag 53
㉑ Rear window defogger button
㉒ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select 96
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
– Emergency flashers 39
– Retractable rear spoiler 109
㉓ Depending on equipment, center console with:
– Audi music interface 176
– Audi phone box 131
㉔ Infotainment system on/off button . 111
㉕ Infotainment system unit 111
㉖ Wind deflector button 34
㉗ Depending on equipment:
– Storage compartment
– Cup holder 64
㉘ Power top button 32
㉙ Parking brake 80
㉚ Depending on equipment:
– START ENGINE STOP button . . . 76
– Engine sound button
㉛ Selector lever (S tronic) 82

Tips

Some of the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions. Some warning and indicator lights turn on when you switch the ignition on and must turn off when the drive system is switched on or while driving.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Overview

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment: ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Red indicator lights

	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*, Instrument cluster ⇨ *page 10*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 10*, ⇨ *page 206*, ⇨ *page 206*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 16*, ⇨ *page 80*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 16*, ⇨ *page 80*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 16*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 16*
	Engine stop ⇨ *page 16*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 52*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 84*, ⇨ *page 87*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 108*, ⇨ *page 208*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 108*, ⇨ *page 208*
	Steering ⇨ *page 108*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 109*
	Hood ⇨ *page 201*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 202*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 208*

Yellow indicator lights

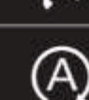
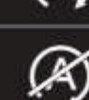
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 11*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 11*, Drive system ⇨ *page 17*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 12*, ⇨ *page 196*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 16*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 16*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 16*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 17*, ⇨ *page 105*, ⇨ *page 108*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 17*, ⇨ *page 106*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ⇨ *page 17*, ⇨ *page 108*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ⇨ *page 17*, ⇨ *page 108*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 17*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 20*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 39*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 39*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 39*, ⇨ *page 44*

OwnersManuals2.com

	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 39*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 44*
	Safety systems ⇨ *page 54*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 77*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 84*, ⇨ *page 87*
ESC OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 106*
	Steering ⇨ *page 108*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 109*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 196*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ⇨ *page 199*,
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 202*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 202*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 202*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 208*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 212*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 231*
TPMS	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 231*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 38*, ⇨ *page 39*

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 38*, ⇨ *page 39*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 78*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 90*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 90*
	High beam headlights ⇨ *page 38*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 16*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 16*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 77*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 78*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 79*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 87*
	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 90*
	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 90*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 92*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 92*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 96*

OwnersManuals2.com

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview (Audi virtual cockpit)

① Engine coolant temperature ... 10
② Left dial
– Tachometer ... 11
③ Tab area
④ Central area
⑤ Status line (one or two lines)
⑥ Right dial
– Convenience display
⑦ Fuel level ... 12
⑧ Right additional display with speedometer
⑨ Left additional display with:
– Selector lever position ... 82
– Audi drive select mode ... 96

WARNING

If there is a severe malfunction in the instrument cluster, the display may turn off. The indicator light may also turn on. Stop the vehicle safely. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
– Speeds are displayed in mph (miles per hour) or km/h (kilometers per hour).
– If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature indicator ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only operates when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 206*. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Note

- Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
- The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the "D" or "S" selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with center armrest

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This will protect the engine components, for example during a cold start or from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Odometer



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

▸ Press the reset button 0.0 on the instrument cluster. The trip odometer will be reset to zero.

Tips

Distances are displayed in mi (miles) or km (kilometers).

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the motor. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Fuel level

The display ⑦ ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only works when the ignition is switched on. When the display has reached the reserve mark, a red LED turns on and the ⛽ indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 196*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 260*.

ⓘ Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating



Fig. 5 Driver information system display

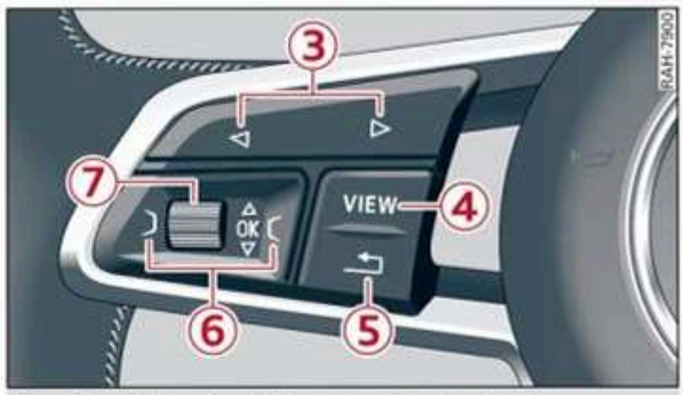


Fig. 6 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① that display various information ②.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions
Second tab	Driver messages (this is only displayed if at least one indicator light/message is being displayed) ⇨ *page 16*
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 165*
	Media ⇨ *page 169*
Fourth tab	Telephone ⇨ *page 129*
Fifth tab	Navigation ⇨ *page 149*
	Map ⇨ *page 158*
Sixth tab	Sound⇨ *page 189*
	Audi connect ⇨ *page 142*
	Settings ⇨ *page 189*

③ ◁▷ Button

Switching tabs: press the ◁▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown (for example, Radio).

④ VIEW Button

Changing the view ⇨ *page 13*.

⑤ ⮌ Button

Return to functions at higher levels.

⑥ ❩ and ❨ Control buttons

Open/close the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 13*. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (such as selecting a station, Lap times*).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel (for example, confirm the station).
– **Zooming in or out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel up/down to zoom in/out on the map.

Control buttons

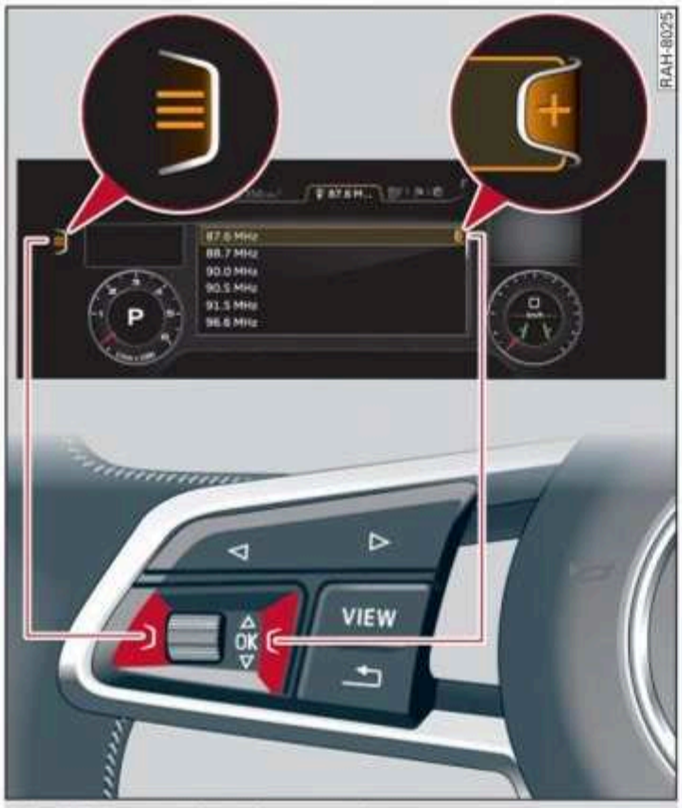


Fig. 7 Opening the selection and options menu

Left control button

– **Opening and closing the selection menu**: press the respective left control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 7*. You can now select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

Right control button

– **Opening and closing the options menu**: press the respective right control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 7*. You can now adjust any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, sound settings).

Switching views



Fig. 8 Standard view: classic/sport*



Fig. 9 Enhanced view

Switching the view

▸ Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 12, fig. 6* to switch from the default view ⇨ *fig. 8* to the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 9*.
▸ To return to the default view, press the VIEW button again.

Setting the default view

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can choose between the classic and the sport view. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Layout** > **Sport layout** or **Classic layout**.

Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Always set the desired default view before driving, because the display functions will not be available for several seconds.

Preset buttons

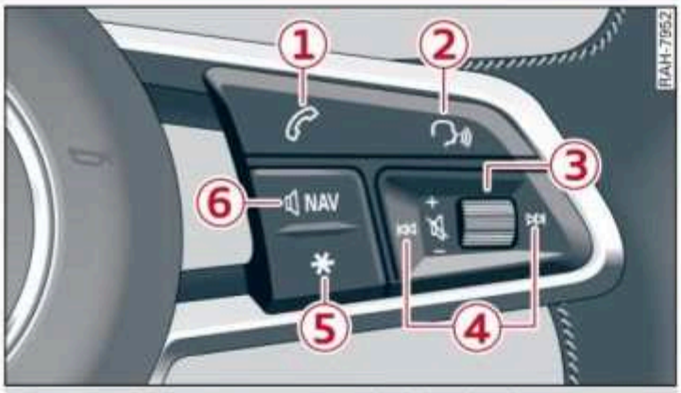


Fig. 10 Multifunction steering wheel, right side

① ☎ Button

– **Accepting a call**: press the ☎ button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the ☎ button during a phone call to end the call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the ☎ button.

② 🗣 Button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the 🗣 button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the 🗣 button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 123, Voice recognition system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

④ ⏮ Button ⏭

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the ⏮ or ⏭ button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the ⏮ or ⏭ button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑤ ✳ Button

– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the ✳ button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: press and hold the ✳ button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - changing a function**: select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑥ NAV Button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

OwnersManuals2.com

Vehicle functions

On-board computer

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to access the following information in this order on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* ④:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 189*
– Average consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 15*
– Driver assistance

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Energy consumers*

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel (for example, using recuperation).

Engine oil temperature display and boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature display/boost indicator

The engine oil temperature display and boost indicator are only shown in the enhanced view or in the sport view ⇨ *page 13*.

Engine oil temperature indicator

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the  or  indicator lights do not turn on.

Boost indicator

The current engine load (meaning the current boost pressure) is indicated by a bar.

Sport displays

Applies to: vehicles with Sport displays

Various sport displays, such as the G meter or engine data, may be available depending on vehicle equipment.

Accessing the sport displays in the central area

- Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Sport displays**.
- Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster.

Accessing the sport displays in the additional display

- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

G meter*

The G meter displays the longitudinal and lateral acceleration. The maximum values that are reached are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

- To reset the stored values, select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Reset values**.

Engine data*

The engine data displays the current power and torque.

Messages

Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK / (P) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

(P) Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

PARK / (P) Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away, even on a small incline.

(P) Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park the vehicle on hills, because it could roll.

PARK BRAKE / (P) Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be enough to secure the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle in a place with less of an incline.

PARK BRAKE / (P) Parking brake: applied

The parking brake is set. Press and hold the brake pedal to release the parking brake.

Steering lock

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine start system

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Engine stop while driving

If the indicator light turns on, there may be a malfunction in the engine or fuel supply.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the button ⇨ *page 106*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp and the ABS / ABS indicator lamp turn on and the driver message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 105*.

Engine control

If the indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a malfunction in the suspension control. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

OwnersManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

- Remote control key ⇨ *page 21*
- Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 22*
- Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 24*, or
- Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 23*

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 23*.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 23*.

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If they do not flash when locking, check if all doors and lids are closed.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and the remote control key is not in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

- If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
- If the most recently used convenience key* is inside the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid will automatically open again after closing it.
- If the convenience key* that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside ⇨ ⓘ.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

- If the vehicle key that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside **using the sensor**. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again. Otherwise, the vehicle will not be protected against unauthorized access.
- If you try to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's door is open, and you accidentally place the vehicle key inside the passenger compartment and close the door, the vehicle will lock at first. But if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it locks, then the vehicle will unlock again. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. If you do not open the vehicle to remove the vehicle key within a brief period, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The vehicle key will then be locked inside the vehicle.
- If the luggage compartment lid closes and the system detects that the last convenience key* that was used is inside the luggage compartment, then the luggage compartment lid will open again. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. The doors will lock. Always take the vehicle ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

key with you, or unauthorized persons may be able to enter the vehicle.

Tips

- Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
- The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED turns on for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set



Fig. 11 Your vehicle key set

The key set provided by the factory includes two remote control keys.

① Remote or convenience key*

The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 22* and ⇨ *page 76*. You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 20*.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

In some cases, it may not be possible to establish vehicle drive ready mode if there is also a vehicle key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

- Climate control system
- Parking aid*
- Side assist*
- Drive select

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Note

Protect the remote control key against high temperatures and direct sunlight. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner.

Tips

- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!
- A key tag that contains information about the vehicle key set may be attached to the key set at the factory. The key tag can be used to reorder vehicle keys. Keep the key tag. If you sell the vehicle, give the key tag to the buyer.
- The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262*.

Removing the mechanical key

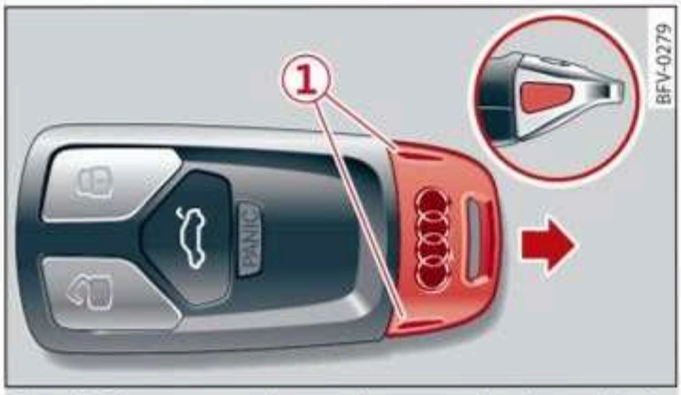


Fig. 12 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

▸ Press the release buttons ① ⇨ *fig. 12* and remove the mechanical key from the remote control key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

- Lock or unlock the glove compartment.
- Manually lock or unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 24*.
- Mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 24*.

LED and battery in the remote control key

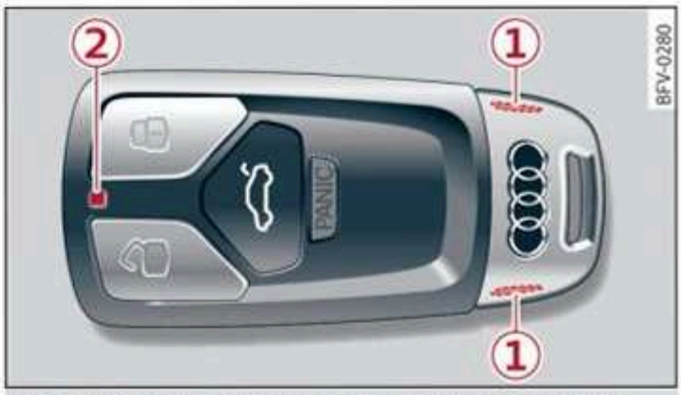


Fig. 13 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

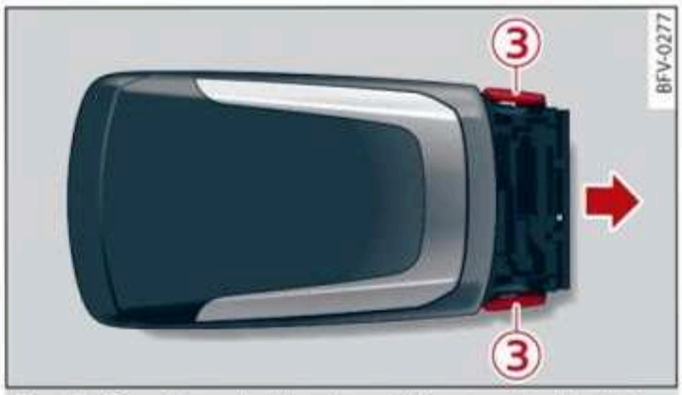


Fig. 14 Remote control key (rear side): removing the battery holder

LED on the remote control key

The LED ② informs you of the remote control key operation.

- ▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is drained. The indicator light turns on and the message **Remote control key: replace key battery** appears in the driver information system. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

The replacement battery in the remote control key must meet the same specifications as the original battery (battery type **CR 2032**).

- ▸ Press the release buttons ① ⇨ *fig. 13* and remove the mechanical key.
- ▸ Press the release buttons ③ ⇨ *fig. 14* on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" facing down.
- Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
- Insert the mechanical key.

WARNING

If batteries or coin cell batteries are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause serious or fatal injuries within a short period of time. There is a risk of chemical burns.
- Keep vehicle keys and key fobs with batteries out of the reach of children.
- Keep new or used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment on a vehicle key does not close securely, stop using the key and keep it away from children.
- Seek medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery was swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner.

Unlocking and locking by remote control

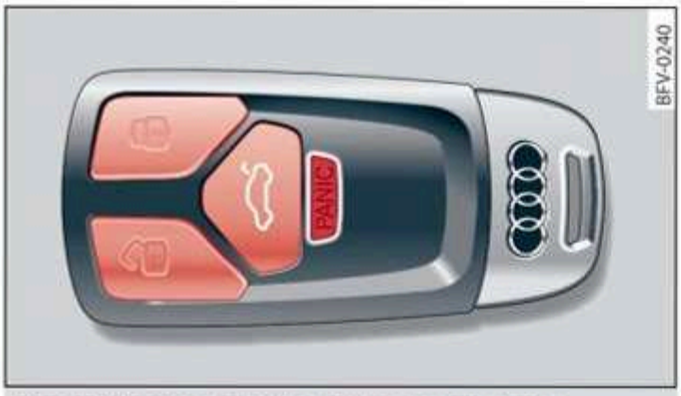


Fig. 15 Remote control key: button programming

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 15*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button.
- To trigger the alarm, press the red PANIC button. A visible and audible vehicle alarm will be triggered. You can do this ass long as you are near your vehicle (within the range for the remote control key).
- To switch off the alarm, press the red PANIC button again.

If you unlock the vehicle but then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment lid, or the hood within a short period time, the vehicle will lock again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 23*.

WARNING

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer open from the inside ⇨ *page 24, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

- Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- The selector lever must be in the P position on vehicles with a convenience key*; otherwise the vehicle will not lock.
- Do not use the vehicle key to lock and unlock when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could trigger the anti-theft alarm*. If this happens, press the unlock button.
- Only use the panic function in an emergency.

OwnersManuals2.com

Unlocking and locking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked and locked without using the remote control key.

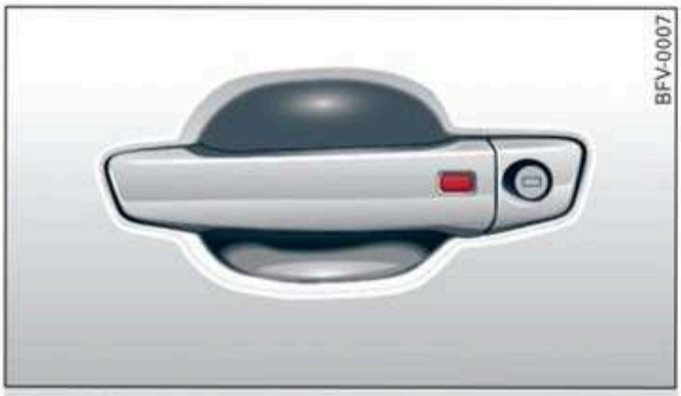


Fig. 16 Door handle: sensor for locking

Unlocking the vehicle

- Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 16*. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

Deactivating the unlock function

You can deactivate the unlock function with the convenience key (keyless access) for one locking and unlocking cycle.

- Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- Close the door.
- Press the lock button on the convenience key and touch the sensor on the door handle (driver's door) one time within five seconds of pressing the button ⇨ *fig. 16*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock.
- To check if the function has been deactivated, wait at least 10 seconds and pull the door handle again. The door should not open.

After that, it will only be possible to unlock the vehicle using the remote control key or by mechanically unlocking the lock cylinder. Keyless access will be active again after the next time the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

You can unlock and lock the vehicle at every door. The convenience key must no be more than approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the door handle. The function should not be impaired if the convenience key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

If you hold the door handle while locking, this can impair the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 23*.

WARNING

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer open from the inside ⇨ *page 24, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

WARNING

Read and following all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Key set on page 19*

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management gradually switches off convenience functions that are not needed. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.

– The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Central locking switch



Fig. 17 Driver's door: central locking switch

- To lock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ ⚠.
- To unlock the vehicle, press the button.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the *outside* for security reasons, such as to prevent unauthorized opening while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 18*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

Door unlocking - You can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver's door** should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

Long press to open windows - You can select if all windows should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 28, Convenience opening and closing*. If you press and hold the button on the vehicle key, all of the windows will close.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Lock when driving[1] - If you select **On**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be locked automatically when driving (Auto Lock).

Fold mirrors - If you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold will in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

OwnersManuals2.com

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

All doors must be unlocked or locked separately if the central locking system fails.

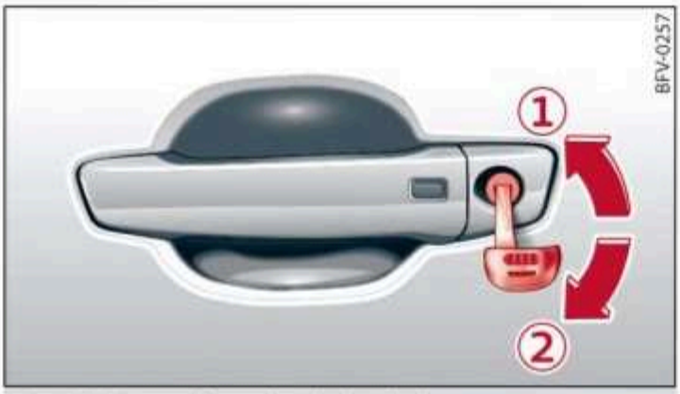


Fig. 18 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 19 Front passenger's door: emergency locking

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: After unlocking and opening the driver's door, you must press the button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on. Otherwise the alarm will sound.

Unlocking and locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 20*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position in the direction of arrow ① ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the "P" position (automatic transmission), close the door, and turn the key **one time** to the lock position ②.

Locking the front passenger's door with the mechanical key

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door ① or in the latch opening ② ⇨ *fig. 19*. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 20*.
- ▸ If necessary, remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 19*.
- ▸ Insert the key into the slot inside and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or to the left (left door*).
- ▸ If necessary, install the cap in the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door is closed, it is no longer possible to open it from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

⚠ WARNING

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer open from the inside ⇨ *page 24, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- ▸ To switch the alarm off, press the button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the anti-theft alarm system may have the following features:

Break-in security feature

The alarm will be triggered if the doors, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid are broken into, or if a door that was previous unlocked using the lock cylinder is opened.

Interior/towing protection monitor

The alarm will be triggered if there are movements detected in the vehicle interior or if there is a change in the vehicle angle.

If you leave persons/animals in the vehicle or have the vehicle transported, switch off the interior/towing protection monitoring alarm to prevent the alarm from being triggered:

- Press the button on the remote control key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- Turn the mechanical key in the door lock to the close position a second time **within two seconds**.

If you lock the vehicle, then the interior/towing protection monitor will stay off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

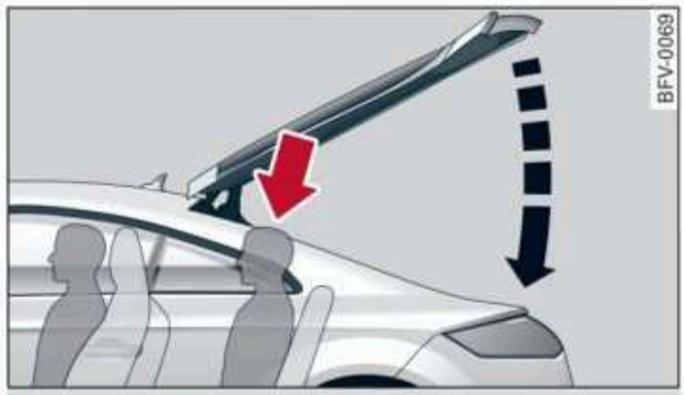
The interior/towing protection monitoring only functions correctly when the windows and the power top* are closed.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 20 Rear lid: handle



Applies to: Coupe
Fig. 21 Opened luggage compartment lid

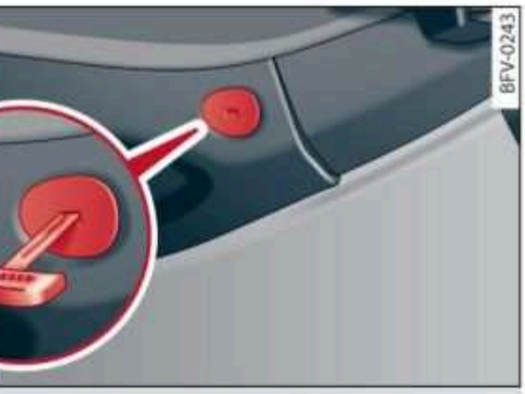
Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Unlock the vehicle or the luggage compartment lid using the / button on the vehicle key and press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 20*. Or
- Applies to: vehicles with convenience key:Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 20*. When the luggage compartment is locked, the vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.
- Lift the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Use the inside grip to pull the luggage compartment lid down and allow it to close using a gentle push ⇨ .

OwnersManuals2.com





OwnersManuals2.com

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid

Applies to: Roadster

The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.

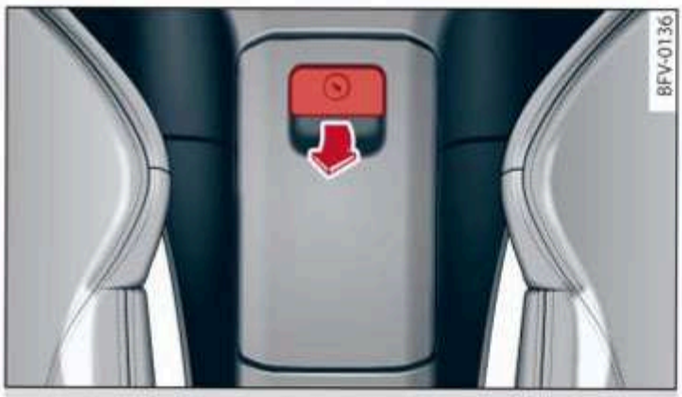


Fig. 24 Storage compartment between the seat backrests



Fig. 25 Emergency release handle

- Pull the handle in the lid in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 24* and tilt the lid downward.
- Take the handle out of the holder.
- Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 25*.

WARNING

The luggage compartment lid emergency release must never under any circumstances be operated when the vehicle is in motion.

Opening the luggage compartment lid from the inside in an emergency

Applies to: vehicles with interior trunk release

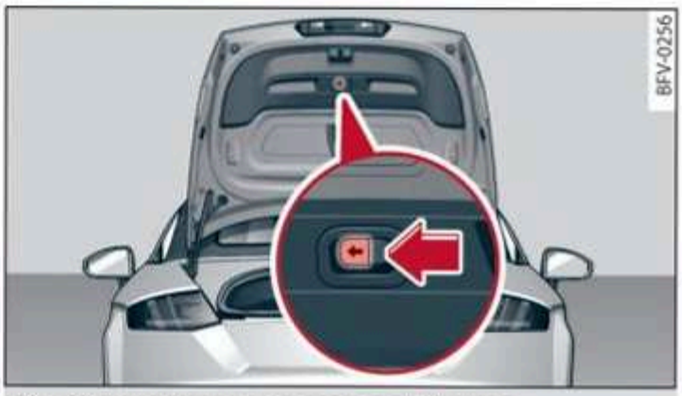


Fig. 26 Inner luggage compartment lid: lever

- Press the lever in the direction of the arrow until the luggage compartment lid opens.

Tips

Never close the luggage compartment lid using the emergency handle.

Power windows

Controls

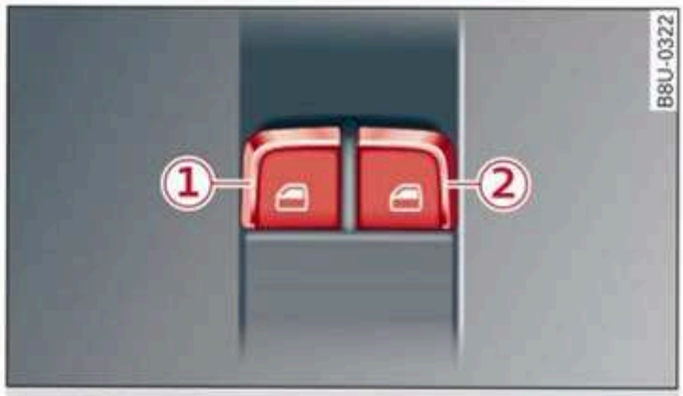


Fig. 27 Driver's door: power window controls

Power window switches:

① Left door

② Right door

Opening and closing the windows

The driver can control all power windows. All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

- To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Correcting a malfunction in the one-touch up/down function

If necessary, you can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

WARNING

– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– You can still open and close the windows for several minutes after turning the ignition off. The power window switch is not disabled until the driver's door or front passenger's door is opened.
– The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. The automatic window may stop closing and will open all the way again even if no obstacle is detected. Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
– When opening the doors and when opening or closing the power top*, the windows will automatically lower approximately 0.4 inches (10 mm).

Convenience opening and closing

All windows can be opened and closed at the same time.

For power top* convenience opening/closing, refer to the information in ⇨ *page 33*.

Convenience opening feature

▸ Press and hold the 🔓 button on the remote control key until all windows reach the desired position.

Convenience closing feature

▸ Hold the key in the driver's door lock in the lock position until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

The function can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 23*.

WARNING

– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 feet (2 m) away from the vehicle. When pressing the 🔓 button, always watch the windows while they are closing so that no one is pinched in the window. The closing process will stop immediately when the 🔓 button is released.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system*: when the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

OwnersManuals2.com

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener



Fig. 28 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Up to three remote control functions can be programmed to the three buttons that are integrated in the control unit above the rearview mirror.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the control unit must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

- For security reasons, you should clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
- For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
- The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

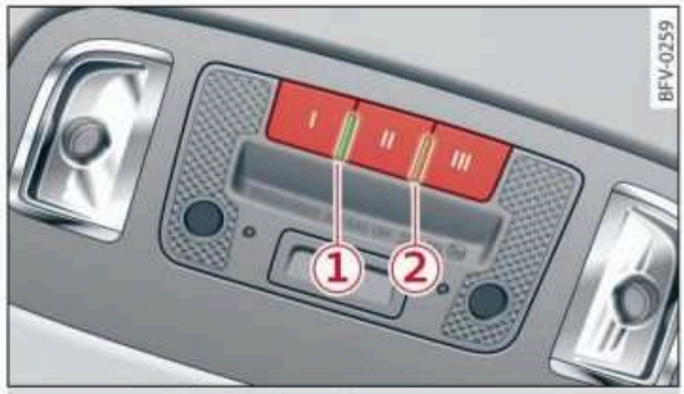


Fig. 29 Control panel above the interior rearview mirror

Requirement: the button in the control panel must be programmed ⇨ *page 29* and the vehicle must be located within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The green LED (1) blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to close the garage door.

Tips

To open or close the garage door, do not press the button longer than 20 seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Programming the transmitter

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

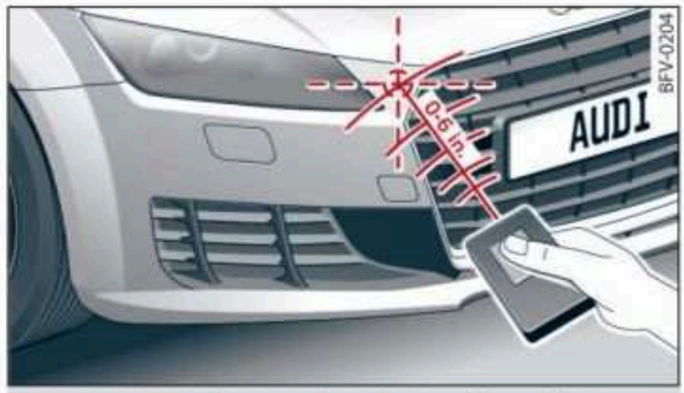


Fig. 30 Distance between the radiator grille and the remote control transmitter

Programming the button: step 1 on the control panel

1. Switch the ignition on. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

2. Press both of the outer buttons on the control unit ⇨ *page 29, fig. 29* until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① blinks. This procedure clears the standard codes that were set at the factory and does **not** need to be repeated again to program the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the button in the control panel that you want to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED ② blinks. The programming mode is active for five minutes.
5. Go in front of the vehicle with the original remote control transmitter for the system that you are programming to the control panel button.

Programming the button: step 2 at the radiator grille

6. Hold the remote control transmitter at the vehicle radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 30*.
7. Now press the remote control transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle blink. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the emergency flashers blink three times, the programming was successful. If the emergency flashers only blink one time, the five-minute time limit for programming has expired or the programming was unsuccessful. Repeat the programming procedure starting from the third step or change the distance to the radiator grille.
9. If the garage door or other systems do not open with the HomeLink buttons even if the programming was successful, the system may use a rolling code instead of a fixed code. You must also then perform **rolling code programming** ⇨ *page 30*.

The other two buttons in the control panel can be programmed using the instructions given above. Start with step 3.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

▸ Switch the ignition on.

▸ Press both of the outer buttons on the control unit until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① blinks.

Reprogramming buttons

▸ Switch the ignition on.

▸ To reprogram an individual button, press the desired button until the green LED ① turns off and the yellow LED ② starts to blink (after approximately 20 seconds). Release the button immediately. The programming mode is active for five minutes.

▸ Continue with step 5.

Tips

– The distance needed between the remote control transmitter and the garage door opener module in the radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 30* depends on the system you are programming.

– Depending on the system model, you may need to release the button on the remote control transmitter while it is programming and press it again. Hold every position you try when programming for at least 15 seconds before trying a new position. Keep an eye on the vehicle turn signals while doing this.

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

On some systems, programming a rolling code is also necessary.

Identifying a rolling code

▸ Press the button in the control unit that is already programmed again and hold it down.

▸ Watch the green LED ① ⇨ *page 29, fig. 29*. If the green LED blinks quickly, the system (such as a garage door) has a rolling code.

▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating the system motor unit

▸ Locate the programming button on the system motor unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary depending on the brand.

▸ Press the programming button on the system motor unit (usually this will activate a "display" ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

on the motor unit). You now have approximately **30 seconds** to program the button in the control panel.

Programming the button in the control panel

- Press and hold the previously programmed button in the control panel for two seconds.
- To complete rolling code programming, press and hold the button again for two seconds.
- On some systems, the button might need to be pressed a third time to end the programming procedure.

After programming, the system should recognize the signal and operate when the button in the control panel is pressed. Now you may program the other buttons as needed.

Tips

– The rolling code can be programmed more quickly and more easily with the help of a second person.
– If any difficulties occur when programming the rolling code, it may be helpful to read the system operating manual.

OwnersManuals2.com

Power top

Automatic power top

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top opens and closes automatically. When open, the power top is stored completely in the power top compartment. The power top can be opened or closed at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h). The power top will not open when the temperature is below 5 °F (-15 °C).

Under normal conditions, the power top is wind- and waterproof. In rare cases, small droplets of water may form under extreme weather conditions, such as torrential or prolonged rain. That is normal and no cause for concern.

Follow the care instructions to keep the power top free of leaks and to maintain its appearance ⇨ *page 233, Care and cleaning*. Also observe the following:

– Open and stow the power top only when it is clean and dry. Stowing the power top when it is damp can create imprints in it, and mildew and other damage can result if it is left stowed while damp for long periods of time.
– To prevent scratching or damaging the power top, do not use any sharp-edged objects to remove ice and snow. The rear window may be cleared of ice with a standard ice scraper.
– Do not leave the power top open for several weeks or the creases in it may become discolored.
– Do not open the power top when the temperature is below 32 °F (0 °C). The fabric in the power top loses elasticity in temperatures below the freezing point.

Opening and closing the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 31 Center console: power top switch

Opening and closing the power top

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ To open or close the power top, pull or press and hold the power top switch until the top is completely opened or closed.

Opening and closing the power top (automatic operation)

Requirement: the speed must be between 4 mph (6 km/h) and 30 mph (50 km/h).

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ To open/close the power top all the way, briefly pull/press the power top switch. It is not necessary to hold the switch.

The status of the power top is shown in the instrument cluster when operating the power top switch.

A message will appear in the instrument cluster if the power top cannot be opened or closed.

WARNING

– When operating the power top, make sure the function is not affected by wind or other factors and that it does not interfere with other drivers.
– Visibility to the rear is limited when operating the power top. Avoid operating the top while driving in reverse.
– Never drive with the power top unlocked. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

– Make sure no one will be injured by the power top supports or other moving components when opening and closing the top.

Note

– To prevent damage to the power top:
  – do not store any objects in the power top storage compartment.
  – make sure there is enough space above the vehicle when opening or closing the power top.

Tips

– To avoid draining the vehicle battery unnecessarily, do not open and close the power top repeatedly when the engine is switched off.
– The power top can be operated manually if there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 34, Power top emergency operation*. Have the problem corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If you park the vehicle with the power top open, the vehicle interior will not be protected from damaging weather or unauthorized access. Lock any items you leave behind in the luggage compartment. Close the power top before leaving the vehicle.
– The side windows automatically lower slightly when opening or closing the power top.

Power top convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 32 Driver's door: turning the key to open and close

Convenience opening with the driver door lock

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button on the remote control key.
- Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the unlock position (1).
- Turn the key to the opening position (1) again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top opens completely.

Convenience closing with the driver door lock

- Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the lock position (2).
- Turn the key to the closing position (2) again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top closes completely.

Releasing the key stops the opening or closing process **immediately**.

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening and closing the power top on page 32*.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Power top: malfunction! Unable to operate

This message appears when there is a malfunction. The power top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 34*.

Power top: operation currently not possible

If the power top is operated continually for a long period of time, the overload protection activates for approximately 15 to 30 minutes. You can open or close the power top again after that.

Power top: malfunction! You may continue driving (limited functionality). See owner's manual

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the system. Try to open or close the power top again. If the message still appears, then have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility correct the malfunction. Do not drive ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

more than 30 mph (50 km/h) until it is corrected.

WARNING

Never drive with the power top unlocked. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Wind deflector

Applies to: vehicles with wind deflector

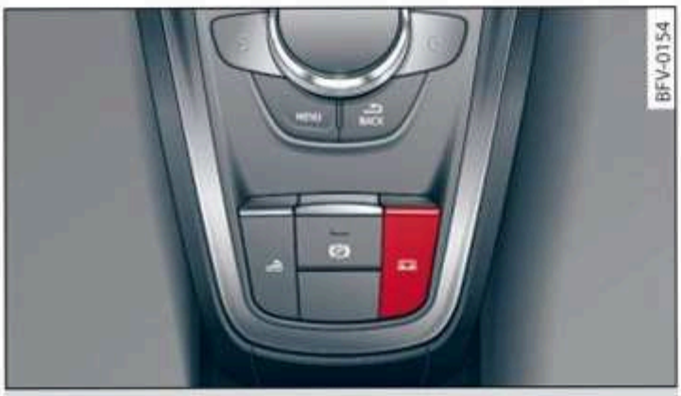


Fig. 33 Center console: switch for operating the wind deflector

The wind deflector reduces air movement in the passenger compartment in order to make driving more comfortable. A power mechanism extends and retracts the wind deflector.

- To extend the wind deflector, pull the wind deflector switch until the wind deflector is completely extended.
- To retract the wind deflector, pull the wind deflector switch until the wind deflector is completely retracted.

WARNING

- Do not use the wind deflector to secure cargo.
- Always pay careful attention when closing the wind deflector. Pinching could cause serious injuries.

Tips

- If the wind deflector switch is released while it is extending, the process will stop immediately.
- The wind deflector works best when all of the windows are rolled up while driving.

Power top emergency operation

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top can be closed manually if there is a malfunction.

- Set the parking brake.
- Open all windows.
- Switch the ignition off.

Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Have a second person assist. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

- The risk of pinching your hands or other people increases during all of the power top emergency operation steps.
  - Make sure all windows are lowered during emergency operation.
  - Do not reach into the power top supports or other moving components.
- Never drive with the power top unlocked. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

OwnersManuals2.com

Step 1: Position the covers

Applies to: vehicles with power top

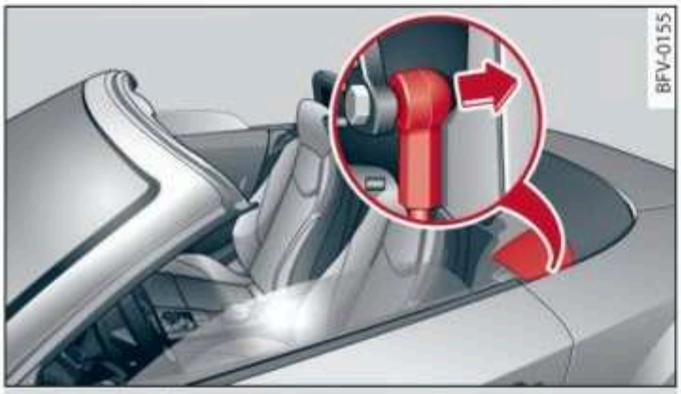


Fig. 34 Closed covers

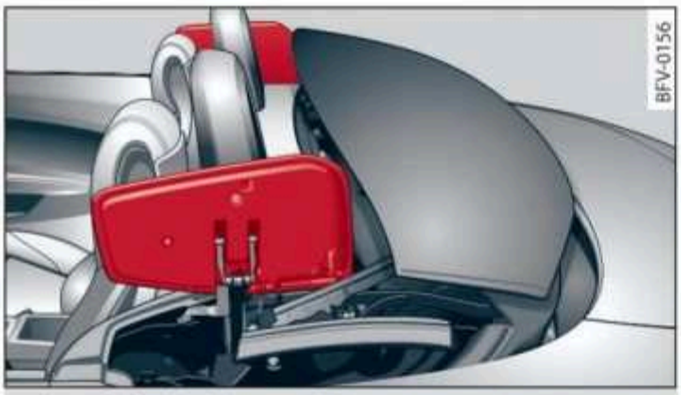


Fig. 35 Open covers

- Disconnect the push rod from the ball head ⇨ *fig. 34*.
- Fold up the cover on the driver's and front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 35*.

Step 2: Release the power top drive

Applies to: vehicles with power top

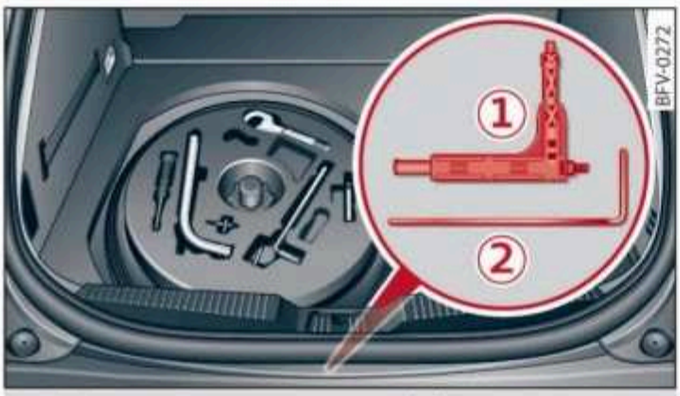


Fig. 36 Luggage compartment: tools for power top emergency operation



Fig. 37 Driver's side: inserted hex socket wrench

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Open the cargo floor.
- If necessary, remove the plastic floor panels ⇨ *page 68, fig. 75*.
- Remove the screwdriver, the crank ①, and the hex socket wrench ②.
- Insert the hex socket wrench into the bolt and remove it completely ⇨ *fig. 37*. Also remove the bolt on the front passenger's side.

Step 3: Close the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

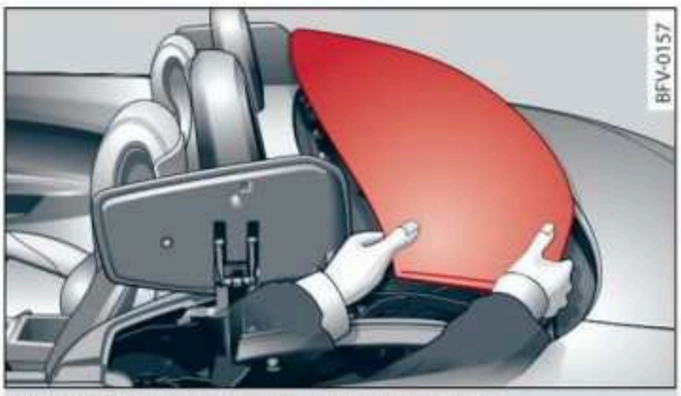


Fig. 38 Power top in power top storage bay

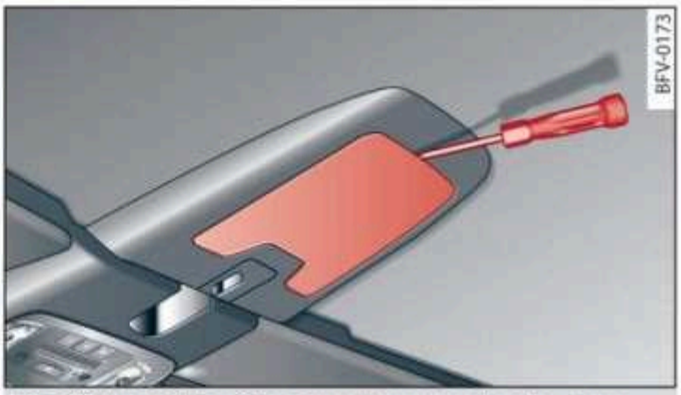


Fig. 39 Inner side of the power top: removing the cover

- Lift the power top out of the storage compartment ⇨ ⚠.
- Pull the power top out completely. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▸ Remove the cover in the center of the power top using a screwdriver ⇨ *fig. 39*.
- ▸ Insert the crank (Torx head) into the opening until the stop ring rests on the motor ⇨ *page 36, fig. 40*.
- ▸ Turn the crank counter-clockwise all the way so that the locking hooks are completely opened.
- ▸ Press the power top onto the windshield frame.

Have a second person assist when positioning the power top. That person should stand on the opposite side of the vehicle and perform the same steps.

WARNING

– When positioning the power top, avoid contact with the supports or other moving parts. Otherwise, you could pinch your hands and increase the risk of injury.
– When pressing the power top down onto the windshield frame, make sure that you do not pinch yourself or anyone else, as this could result in injury.

Note

Make sure that both covers are completely open and the push rods are clipped in to avoid damage when opening the power top.

Step 4: Lock the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

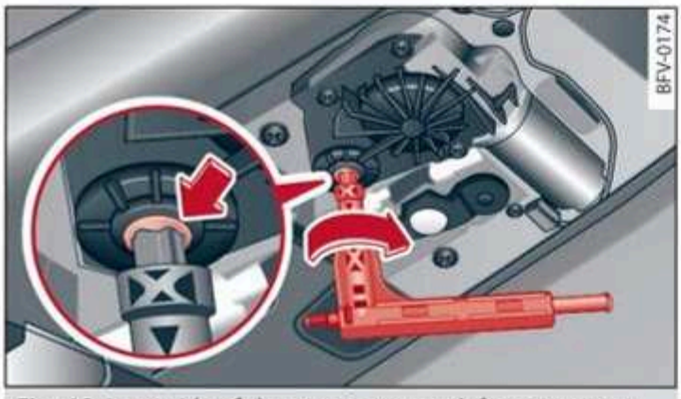


Fig. 40 Inner side of the power top: crank for emergency operation

- ▸ Pull the power top downward at the side.
- ▸ Turn the crank clockwise until the power top is completely locked.
- ▸ Pull out the crank.

Tips

Make sure the locking mechanisms are locked securely.

OwnersManuals2.com

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 41 Instrument panel: light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - lights are off (in some markets, the daytime running lights are switched on when the ignition is switched on.)

- **USA models:** the daytime running lights are automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O** or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight). The **Daytime running lights** can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 38* ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O** position, or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

Buttons

When you turn the light switch to the AUTO or low beam headlight position, you can activate the following functions:

- All-weather lights*. The headlights automatically adjust so that there will be less glare, for example when the road surface is wet.

- Rear fog lights*

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that there is less glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions are available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Static cornering light* (vehicles with LED headlights) - the cornering light switches on automatically when the steering wheel is turned at a certain angle at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km/h) and when the turn signal is activated at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

Highway light function* (vehicles with LED headlights) - This function adapts the lighting for highway driving based on vehicle speed.

Speed dependent light distribution* (vehicles with LED headlights) - The speed dependent light distribution adapts the light in towns and on highways or expressways. Intersections can also be illuminated on vehicles with a navigation system*.

⚠ WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to switch them on and off manually depending on light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.

OwnersManuals2.com

– To reduce glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights* should only be turned on in accordance with the legal regulations in the country where you are operating the vehicle.
– If the battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Always make sure your vehicle is parked and adequately illuminated according to the legal regulations in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.

Tips

– When using lighting equipment, the driver is responsible for adhering to any local applicable regulations while driving and when parking the vehicle.
– The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
– Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 38*.
– In some markets, the tail lights will switch on when the daytime running lights switch on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

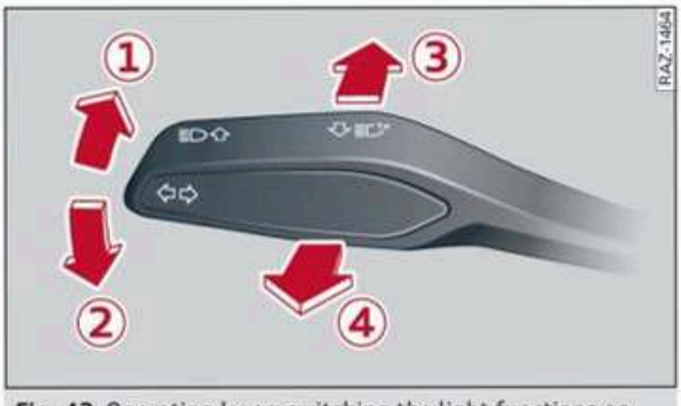


Fig. 42 Operating lever: switching the light functions on and off

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Turn signals ⇦⇨

The turn signal will activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position while the ignition is switched on. The respective ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light flashes. The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beams ≡D and headlight flasher

▸ Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - High beams on

④ - High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The following settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium**, or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Daytime running lights

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on or off using the MMI. Select **On** or **Off**.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on. This menu item is shown with a "gray background".

Entry/exit lighting

The **Entry/exit lighting** illuminates the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened while the ignition is off. The entry/exit lighting works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. The daytime running lights switch on automatically each time the vehicle is unlocked, regardless of how bright it is outside the vehicle.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 43 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are turned on, the ⇦ and ⇨ indicator lights will flash at the same time.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

– you are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
– your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency
– your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

Messages

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb. Replace the bulb immediately.

Vehicle lights: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

Adaptive light is not working. The headlights still function.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Light bulbs are pressurized and can explode when they are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, the high-voltage component on HID headlights (xenon lights) must be handled correctly.

Interior lighting

Interior lighting



Fig. 44 Headliner: interior lighting

- Door contact switch. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

A switch is no longer needed to switch the reading lights on. A swiping movement or a brief tap on the light is all that is needed to switch the light on or off. If you hold your finger on the reading light when switching it on, this can dim the light down to a certain level.

Interior lighting

There are other optional interior lighting functions that are available. Several functions can be set in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

Instrument illumination



Fig. 45 Light switch: instrument illumination

– The brightness of the instrument cluster and the center console can be adjusted.

- ▸ Press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- ▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

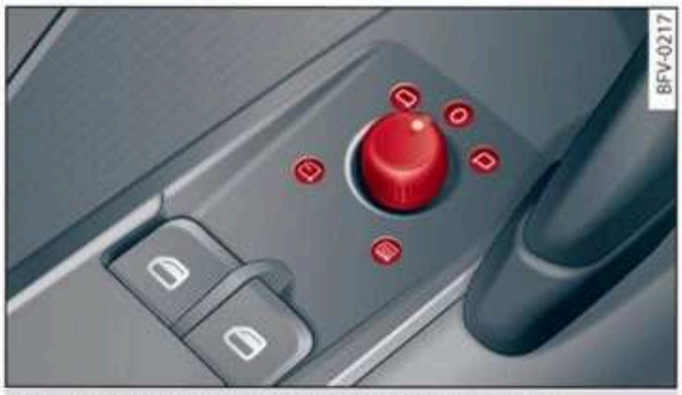


Fig. 46 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

- ▸ Turn the knob in the driver's door to the desired position:

0 – Deactivates all adjustment functions.

/ – Selects the left or right exterior mirror. To adjust the mirror glass in a mirror, press the knob in the desired direction.

– Heats the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

– Folds the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. In the Infotainment system, you can select ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 23*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

Requirement: the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

The mirror surfaces tilt slightly when reverse gear is selected to provide a better view, for example of the edge of the curb.

You can adjust the mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.

Tips

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Dimming the mirrors

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors* dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and airways.

- Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
- If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the eyes, flush them thoroughly with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
- If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes, and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
- If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

- If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
- The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 47 Roof headliner: sun visor

Applies to: vehicles with pivoting sun visors: The sun visors can be pulled out of their brackets and turned toward the doors ①.

The vanity mirrors on the sun visors have covers. Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow ②.

Applies to: vehicles with mirror lighting: The mirror lighting switches on when the cover opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

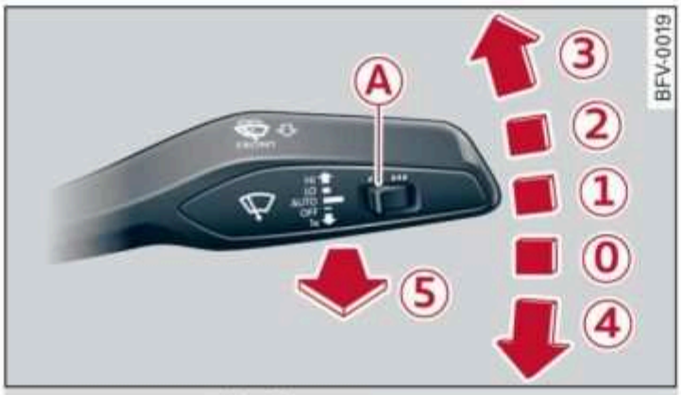


Fig. 48 Lever: windshield wipers

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor*, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor* is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ Clean the windshield. The number of wipes and afterwipes depends on how long the lever is held in position ⑤.

The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within ten seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

If you hold the lever in position ⑤ for longer than half a second, the edge wiping feature will be activated. This moves the wiper closer to the edge of the windshield and performs an afterwipe to clean the residue that results from the wiping process from the edge of the windshield. The function is available when driving at speeds up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

The headlight washer system* only functions when the lights are switched on. The headlights are automatically cleaned the first time and every fifth time the lever is moved to position ⑤.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.

OwnersManuals2.com

– The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.
– Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 43, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

– If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– The windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0) before using a car wash. This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Clean the wiper blades with a soft towel and glass cleaner.

▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 43*.
▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

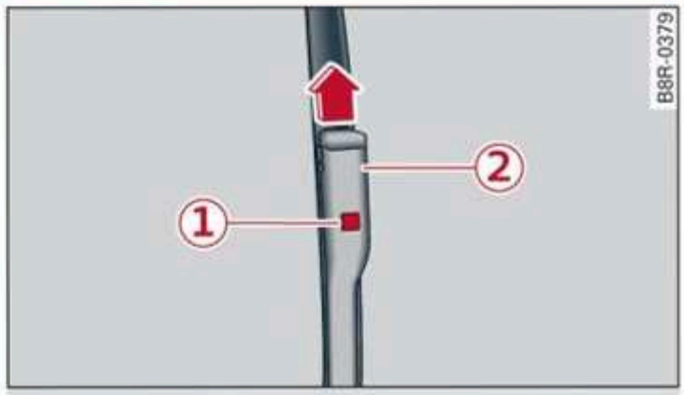


Fig. 49 Windshield wiper: removing the wiper blade

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ To bring the windshield wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ ⇨ *page 42, fig. 48*.
▸ To bring the wipers into the starting position, turn the ignition on and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 42, fig. 48*.

Removing the wiper blade

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
▸ Hold the wiper blade firmly.
▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 49* on the wiper blade.
▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
▸ Turn the service position off. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

- The windshield wipers must only be folded up when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
- You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
- You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Messages

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

You can still control all functions that are not controlled by the rain sensor using the windshield wiper lever.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

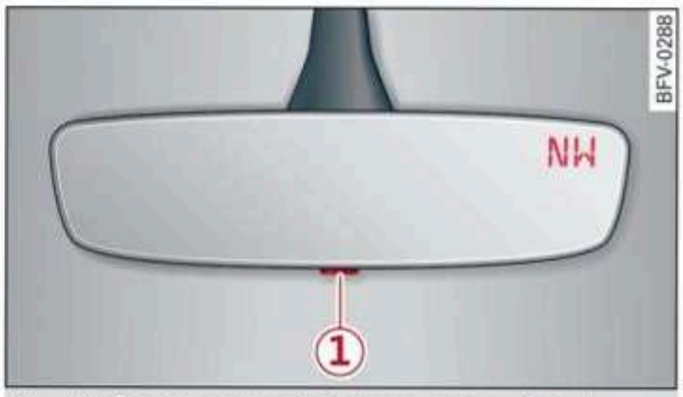


Fig. 50 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

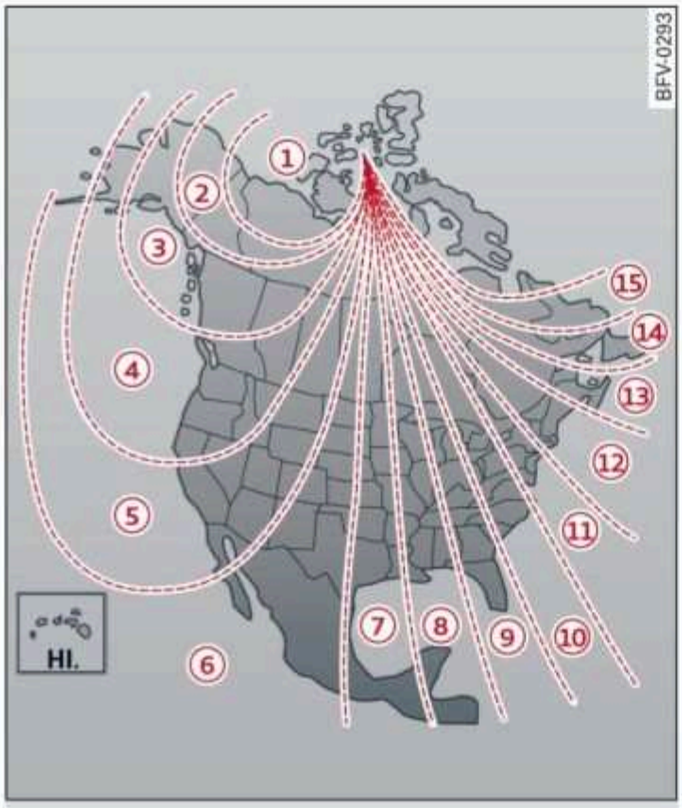
▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button ① until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

OwnersManuals2.com



OwnersManuals2.com

Sitting correctly and safely

Correct passenger seating position

General information

As the driver, you are responsible for making sure every passenger is sitting correctly in their seat and maintaining this seating position while driving. Make sure that:

- Every passenger in the vehicle has adjusted his or her seat correctly ⇨ *page 46*
- Applies to: Coupe: Passengers in the rear seats must observe the height requirements and the minimum distance between the head and the rear window ⇨ *page 49*.
- The steering wheel is adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 49*
- The mirrors are adjusted so that there is a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle ⇨ *page 40*
- Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her safety belt fastened correctly ⇨ *page 50*
- The activation status of the front passenger's airbag is suitable for the passenger in the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 56*
- Children are secured in suitable child safety seats that are secured to appropriate vehicle seats ⇨ *page 58*. Read and observe the important safety information pertaining to the use of child safety seats on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 59*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Safety belts can only provide its optimal protection when they are routed correctly. Incorrect seating positions significantly reduce the protective functions of the safety belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt routing.

The following list includes examples of seating positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. This is not a complete list. Audi would simply like to increase your awareness of the topic. The following points apply when the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand inside the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your backrest too far back.
- Never lean against the instrument panel.
- Never lie down on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit only on the front section of the seat.
- Never sit sideways on the seat.
- Never lean against the window.
- Never place your feet out of the window.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrest.
- Never drive or ride in a seat without fastening your safety belt.
- Never ride in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increase the risk of serious or fatal injury to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with occupants who are not seated correctly. Note the important information and warnings in the chapters for the topics given above.

Tips

- If physical circumstances do not allow you to assume the correct seating position, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Front seats

General information

Make sure that: ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- You can press the pedals down completely while your legs are slightly bent.
- The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel or instrument panel is at least 10 inches (25 cm).
- The distance between your knees and the instrument panel is at least 4 inches (10 cm).
- Your thighs are lightly supported by the front surface of the seat.
- The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it.
- You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle.
- You have a clear view of the instrument cluster and indicator lights

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel, the airbag system cannot provide the optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury and death.
- To reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, never drive with the backrest reclined very far. The airbag system and safety belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the safety belt correctly. If the backrest is angled back too far, the safety belt can shift to soft areas of the body, such as the stomach, which increases the risk of injury.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat. Lack of control or attention when adjusting can result in injuries due to pinching to vehicle occupants both in the front seats and rear seats.
- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Objects could shift and enter the area around the pedals, which could prevent you from using them. You would then be unable to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Make sure that the floor mats are always securely attached.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never place additional floor mats or other floor covers over the installed floor mats, because this reduces the pedal's range of motion and can impair pedal operation.
- To reduce the risk of injury, never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. This also applies to passengers in the rear seats.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage, be very careful when adjusting the seat to make sure the head restraints do not come into contact with the headliner.

Power seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats

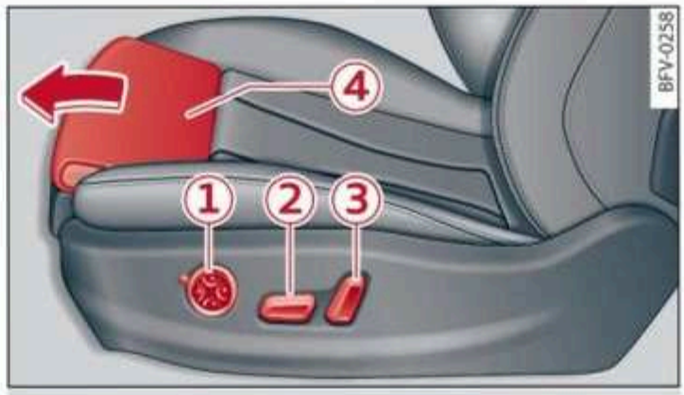


Fig. 52 Front seat: power seat adjustment

① - Lumbar support or multifunction button* ⇨ *page 48*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the button in the applicable location.

② - Adjusting the seat upward or downward: push the rear section of the button upward or downward. To adjust the seat surface, press the front part of the button upward or downward.

② - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

③ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

④ - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the grip handle. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because they could be injured.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction button

You can adjust the side bolsters using the multifunction button.

- If you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 47, fig. 52* to the left or right, the side bolsters on the seat backrests will increase or decrease the lateral support.

Tips

The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with easy entry function

Easy seat entry makes it easier to get into the back seats.

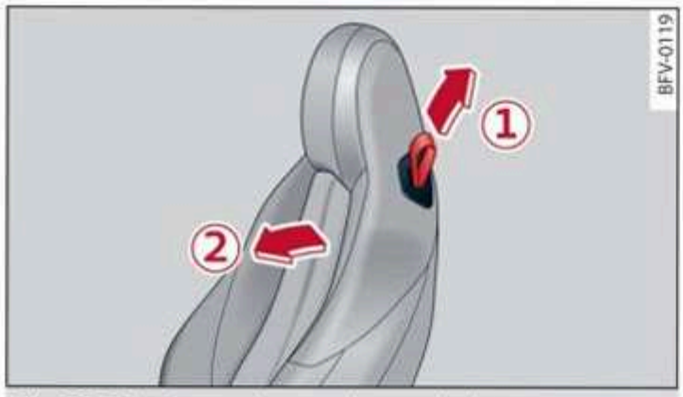


Fig. 53 Driver's seat: loop on the seat backrest

- To fold the front seat backrests forward, pull on the loop and fold the seat backrest.

WARNING

Always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in place when driving.

Center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with center armrest

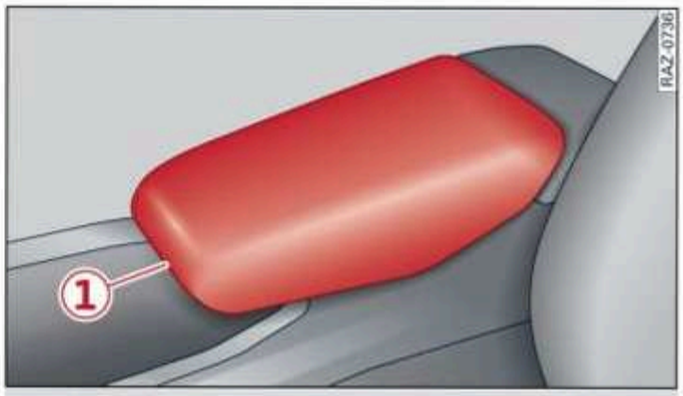


Fig. 54 Cockpit: center armrest

Adjusting the center armrest

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Press the button ① to raise or lower the armrest.
- To adjust the armrest forward or backward, move the armrest in the desired direction.
- To adjust the angle, raise the armrest in stages.
- To move the armrest back into the original position, raise it slightly out of the top level and fold it downward.

WARNING

- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
- In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver's arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.

OwnersManuals2.com

Rear seats

Rear bench seat

Applies to: Coupe

Rear seat passengers must meet certain criteria.

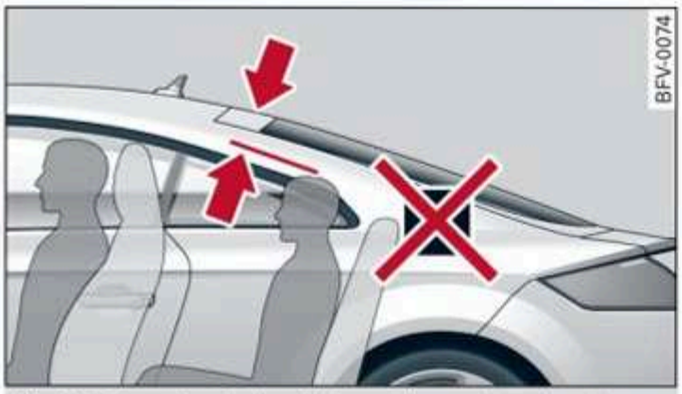


Fig. 55 Correct seated position on the rear bench seat

WARNING

- Only passengers up to 57 inches (145 cm) tall may sit on the rear bench seat.
- The minimum distance between the head and the rear window when sitting upright should not be less than 1 inch (2.5 cm). People who sit taller than this could suffer severe injuries when closing the luggage compartment lid or during a collision. Always pay attention to the rear passengers when closing the luggage compartment lid.
- No heavy, hard objects may be placed on the luggage compartment cover. They endanger the vehicle passengers when opening the luggage compartment lid or when braking suddenly.

Steering wheel

General information

Make sure that:

- The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 inches (25 cm).
- Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
- You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and you have a clear view of the instrument cluster
- You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, make sure the steering wheel is adjusted correctly and cannot be moved out of position before you start to drive.
- If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury or fatality.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.



Fig. 56 Steering column: lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

- ▸ Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever all the way up until it engages.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the steering wheel before you start driving.
- Push the lever upward firmly so that the steering wheel position does not change unintentionally while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety belts

General information

Each seat is equipped with a three-point safety belt. Safety belts that are worn correctly are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in a collision. Therefore, wear your safety belt correctly and make sure that all vehicle passengers are also wearing their safety belts correctly when the vehicle is moving.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle passenger must still always wear the appropriate safety belt. In addition to their normal protective function, safety belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision so that the airbags can deploy correctly and provide additional protection. Safety belts provide protection during collisions when the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed.

WARNING

The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the safety belt is not fastened, if it is worn incorrectly, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their safety belts correctly before every trip and must always keep their safety belts fastened during the trip, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children that are seated in a child safety seat that is appropriate for their weight and age and that is secured with a safety belt.
- In the event of a collision, vehicle occupants that are not wearing safety belts could be propelled through the vehicle interior and collide with vehicle components, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or doors. In some situations, vehicle occupants could also be ejected from the vehicle. Vehicle occupants who do not wear safety belts not only endanger themselves, but also other people in the vehicle.
- Only one person may be fastened with a safety belt at a time. Never secure more than one person, including children, with a single safety belt.
- Never allow children or infants to ride on another person's lap and be belted into the safety belt with them.
- Insert the belt buckle only in the belt latch belonging to the corresponding seat, so that the protective function is not impaired.
- To ensure the maximum protective function of the safety belts, all vehicle passengers must sit in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 46*.
- Check the condition of your vehicle's safety belts regularly ⇨ *page 234*. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, have the damaged safety belt replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- The safety belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Safety belts that are strained during an accident must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

OwnersManuals2.com

Correct safety belt positioning

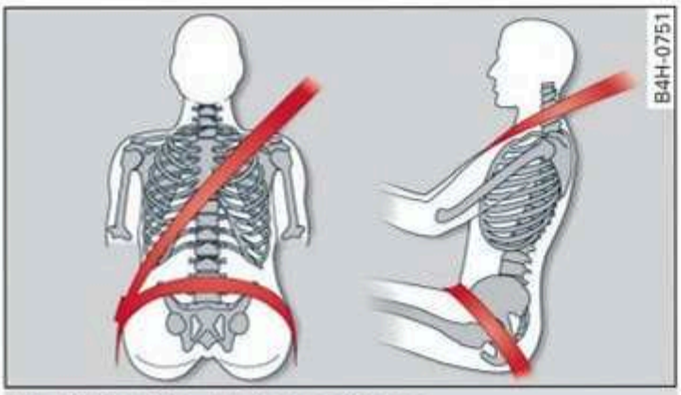


Fig. 57 Lap/shoulder belt positioning



Fig. 58 Safety belt positioning for pregnant women

Fastened safety belts only offer optimal protection during an accident and reduce the risk of serious injury or death when they are positioned correctly. Furthermore, the correct safety belt position holds the vehicle occupant in place so that a deployed airbag can provide maximum protection. Therefore, always fasten the safety belt and make sure it is positioned correctly ⇨ *fig. 57*.

To ensure the safety belt is positioned correctly, make sure of the following points:

- The lap portion of the safety belt must be located across the lap.
- The shoulder portion of the safety belt must rest over the center of the shoulder.
- The safety belt must always rest flat and securely on the body.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following may be available to adjust the safety belt to your body height:

- Height-adjustable front seats
- Belt guide strap on the seat backrest

For pregnant women, the safety belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible on the lap, so that no pressure is applied to the lower abdomen. This should be done throughout the entire pregnancy ⇨ *fig. 58*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect safety belt positioning can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

- Never drive with the backrest reclined extremely far. The more the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to the safety belt being routed incorrectly.
- The safety belt itself or a loose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
- The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder and chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or across the neck or face.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
- The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body and the lap.
- The belt webbing must not be pinched or twisted, or rub against sharp edges.
- If the safety belt height is set incorrectly and/or the safety belt is routed incorrectly, then the safety belt's protective function will be impaired in the event of an accident. Make sure the safety belt is at the right height and is routed correctly for the passenger using it.
- A safety belt that is too loose may lead to injuries during an accident, because your body will move farther forward due to kinetic energy and will be stopped abruptly by the belt.
- Heavily bulky, loose clothing (for example, a coat over a sports jacket) may prevent the seat and safety belts from functioning correctly.
- Do not position the safety belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses, pens, etc.).

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must sit as low as possible on the lap of pregnant women and lie flat under the belly.

Note

Make sure that there are no hook-and-loop fasteners or sharp objects such as zippers or rivets on clothing in the area where the safety belt is worn. Otherwise, the safety belt could be damaged.

Fastening and unfastening safety belts

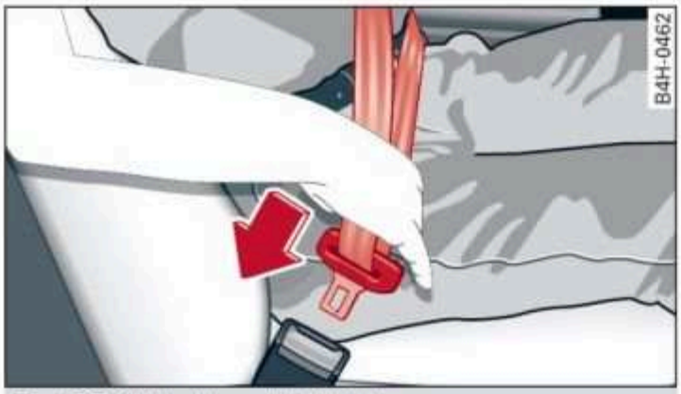


Fig. 59 Belt buckle and belt latch

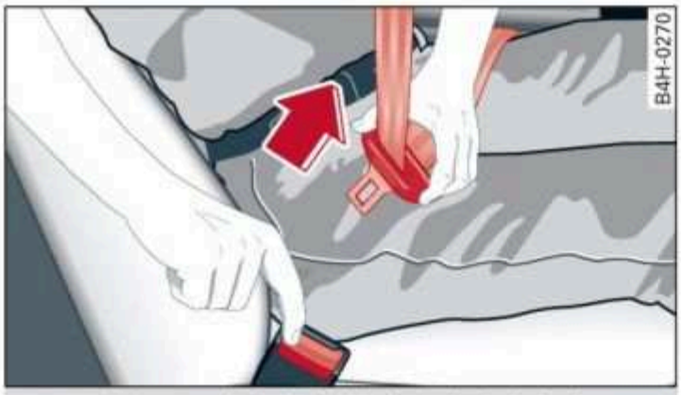


Fig. 60 Releasing the belt buckle from the belt latch

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 50*.

Fastening the safety belt

- ▸ Pull the safety belt by the belt buckle evenly across your chest and lap.
- ▸ Insert the belt buckle in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 59*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the latch.

Unfastening the safety belt

- ▸ Press the red button on the belt latch ⇨ *fig. 60*. The belt buckle will pop out.
- ▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that the safety belt can roll up more easily.

Safety belt monitoring system

- If the indicator light turns on or flashes, a front safety belt is not fastened or it has been unfastened while driving. There may be additional audible warning signals.

Additional safety belt functions

Belt retractor lock

Applies to: Coupe: The safety belts on the rear seats and on the front passenger seat are equipped with a belt retractor lock.

Applies to: Roadster: The safety belt on the front passenger seat is equipped with a belt retractor lock.

- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat with a safety belt, the belt retractor lock on the safety belt may need to be activated. Follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer.
- ▸ When a vehicle passenger has fastened a safety belt, the belt retractor lock should not be activated. If the belt retractor lock has been activated unexpectedly, deactivate it.

Deactivating or activating the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 61*.

Safety belt retractor

The safety belts are equipped with an automatic belt retractor. This automatic retractor allows the safety belt to be pulled all the way out when the belt is pulled slowly. However, the automatic retractor locks during sudden braking maneuvers. It also locks the belts when accelerating, driving uphill, and driving around curves.

Belt force limiter

Safety belts with belt force limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

Safety belt pretensioners

In some collisions, pyrotechnic belt tensioners may secure the safety belts so that they cannot ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

loosen. This reduces forward movement by the vehicle passengers.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

- If you have not fastened your safety belt, you are in an incorrect seating position, or you are too close to the airbag system, the airbag system will not be able to protect you. This increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that every vehicle passenger has their safety belt correctly fastened and is sitting in a correct seating position ⇨ *page 46*. This is necessary regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. To help ensure that the airbag system can deploy correctly, never bend forward or lean on the door or the side window. Otherwise, serious and possibly fatal injuries can occur if the airbags deploy.
- People, animals, or objects between the passengers and the airbag system can interfere with the correct deployment of the airbag or can be thrown through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that nothing is located between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Do not secure or transport any objects within the deployment zone of the airbag systems, especially on the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, on the doors, on the windows, or in the footwell.
- Never put stickers on the airbag system covers or cover them with any objects.
- Applies to: Coupe: Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
- You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Since the side airbags deploy from the seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the side airbags.
- Damage to the original seat covers in the airbag deployment area must always be repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Airbag system components are installed at various locations in your vehicle. Incorrect work or repairs on the vehicle could damage the airbag system components or impair their functionality. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility make repairs or modifications to a vehicle.
- The airbag system can only provide protection during one collision. If there is another collision, the airbag system will not deploy again. If the airbag system has deployed, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Fine dust may appear if the airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause difficulty breathing, particularly for individuals who have or have ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

had asthma or other health issues that affect breathing. Exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors to get access to fresh air.

Tips

If you are transporting children in the vehicle, read the information and follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 58*.

Safety systems monitoring

The indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensor, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you switch the ignition on and turns off after several seconds.

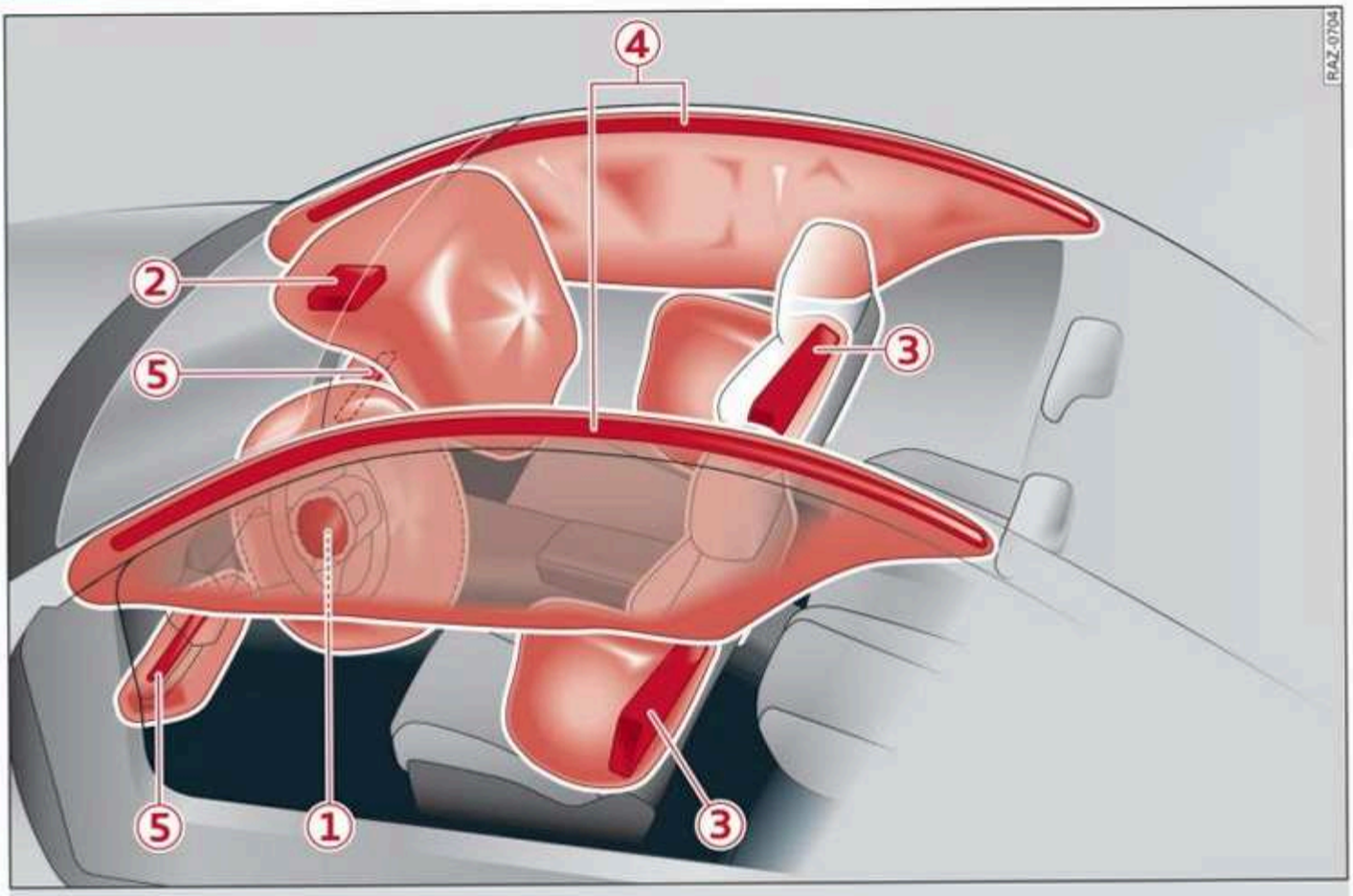
If the indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

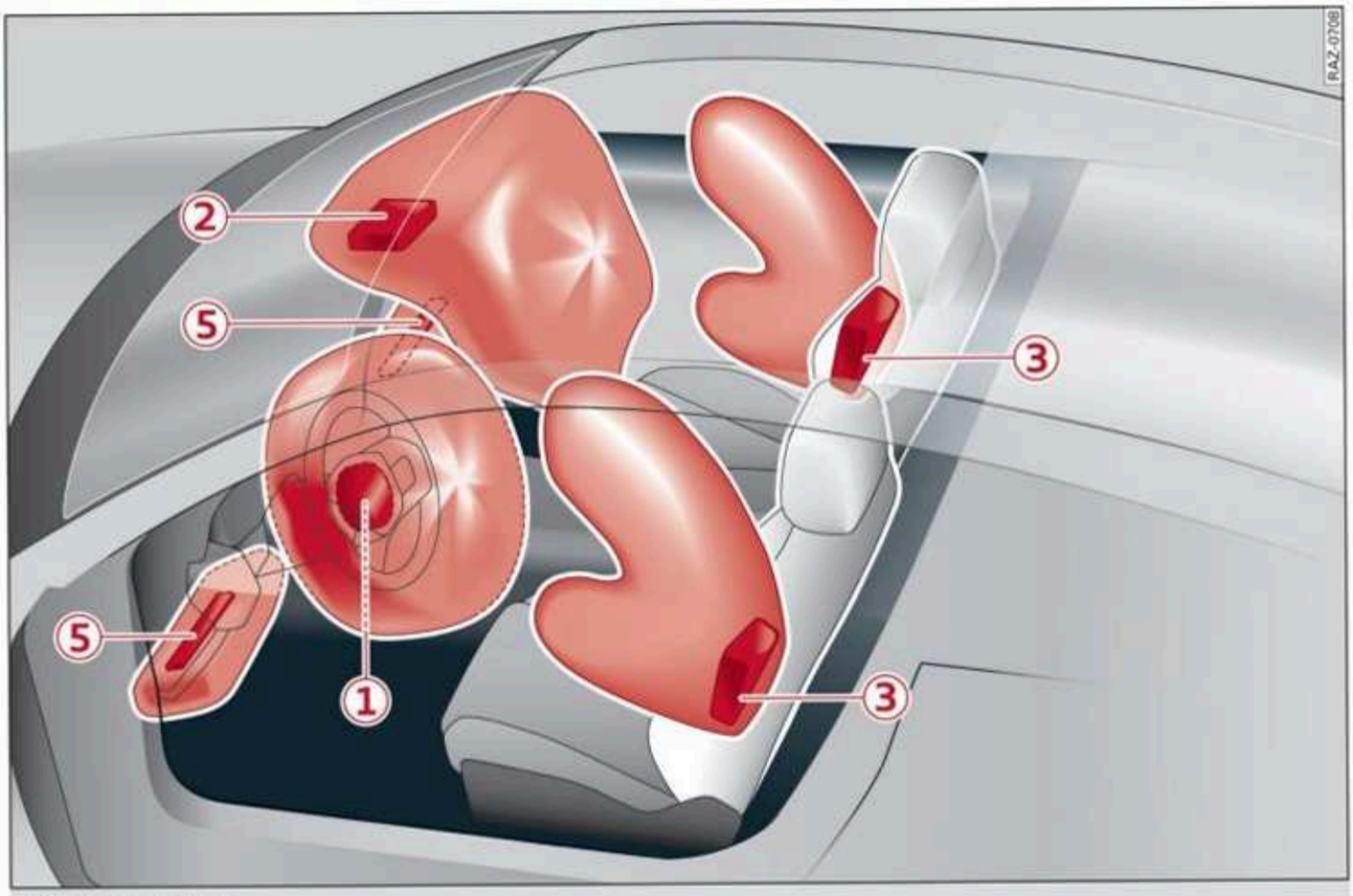
OwnersManuals2.com

Description



Applies to: Coupe

Fig. 61 Airbag overview image (enlarged section: deployed airbags)



Applies to: Roadster

Fig. 62 Airbag overview image (enlarged section: deployed airbags)

OwnersManuals2.com

The locations of the airbags are labeled with "AIRBAG". The following airbags are installed in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Side airbags
④ Applies to: Coupe: Head curtain airbag with ejection mitigation
⑤ Knee airbags

Airbags offer the best possible protection in your vehicle during an accident when they are used together with safety belts that are fastened correctly, and when passengers are sitting in the correct seating position. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and do not replace safety belts.

Applies to: Coupe: Airbags may deploy during head-on, side-impact, or rollover collisions.

Applies to: Roadster: Airbags may deploy during head-on or side-impact collisions.

The deployment area for the airbag system cannot be defined for every situation, since the circumstances surrounding accidents can vary widely. Factors that play an important role include the condition of the object that the vehicle hits (hard or soft), the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The deciding factor for the deployment of the airbag system is the deceleration that occurs during an accident. Sensors in the vehicle are designed to detect the severity of an accident in conjunction with the control module, and to provide a targeted and timely deployment of the restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration that is measured during an accident is below the specified reference values in the control module, then the airbags will not deploy, even though the vehicle may be severely damaged from the accident. In these cases, the vehicle occupants will be protected by the safety belts if they are fastened and worn correctly.

The deployment of the front passenger's airbag will depend on the occupancy of the seat ⇨ *page 56*.

Each deployed airbag is filled with gas. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. Inflated airbags reduce the movement of passengers wearing safety belts in the direction of the impact and thus help to reduce the risk of injury. They can help to protect the head, upper body, and lap, for example. However, there is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

The airbag system only works when the ignition is turned on.

If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Tips

Applies to: Coupe

The side curtain airbags in your vehicle have ejection mitigation functions. This reduces the risk of being ejected from the vehicle interior during an accident, especially in the event of a vehicle rollover.

Advanced airbag system



Fig. 63 Headliner: indicator light to display the status of the front passenger's airbag

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to these requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger's side ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

has been certified for "suppression" for infants approximately 12 months old and younger, and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The advanced airbag system will activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag based on the occupancy of the seat. If a front airbag deploys during an accident, the deployment force will adapt to the passenger.

Components

The advanced airbag system consists of the following components:

- Front airbags in the steering wheel and in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side: these can protect the front passengers during an accident
- Passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat: this detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied (for example, by a person or a small child in a child safety seat)
- Seat position sensors on the front seats: these determine the distance between the seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel
- Sensors in the front safety belt latch: these detect if the safety belts are fastened
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light in the headliner: this indicates if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated
- Indicator light in the instrument cluster: this monitors the function of the Advanced Airbag System components to ensure they are functioning correctly

How the components function together

The passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied. The passenger occupant detection sensor measures the electrical capacity on the front passenger's seat. The passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated depending on the electrical capacity that is measured.

The passenger's airbag is activated if:

- The electrical capacity is higher than the threshold stored in the control module
- The electrical capacity is the same as or greater than the electrical capacity of a typical adult

The passenger's airbag is deactivated if:

- The electrical capacity is lower than the threshold stored in the control module
- The electrical capacity is the same as or less than the electrical capacity of a typical one-year-old child in a child safety seat that has been used for certification in accordance with FMVSS 208

If the front passenger's airbag is activated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator light will turn on.

If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light will turn on.

The deployment force of the front airbags adapts based on whether or not the safety belt is used and the distance between the seat and the steering wheel/instrument panel. For example, if a person is too close to the front airbag, the front airbag will deploy with less force to help reduce the risk of injury.

Meaning of PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light

When the ignition is switched on, the system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied. PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will turn on for several seconds during this process. Then it will indicate whether the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated.

- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF: the front passenger's airbag is deactivated and will not deploy in the event of an accident.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG ON: the front passenger's airbag is activated and could deploy in the event of an accident.

If a change to the occupancy status of the front passenger's seat is detected PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will flash for several seconds and will then display the status of the front passenger's airbag. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Always make sure the indicator light corresponds to the occupancy of the front passenger's seat.

- **An adult or individual of similar size in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, therefore PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain turned on.
- **An individual of smaller size (for example, an adolescent or small adult) in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must stay on.
- **Child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must stay on.
- **Front passenger's seat not occupied:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must stay on.

WARNING

- An adult or a person with a small stature (such as a young person or small adult) seated on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the passenger's airbag in the event of a collision if the passenger's airbag is deactivated. This increases the risk of injury and death. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG ON remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON does not turn on, make sure the front passenger is sitting correctly in the seat ⇨ *page 46* and that there is nothing covering the front passenger's seat (such as blankets or pillows). If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
- A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat - especially in a rear-facing child safety seat - can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Applies to Coupe: Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If special circumstances require the use of a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF stays on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
- Fluids, electronic devices, or mechanical damage on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger seat occupant detection to malfunction. The system may then incorrectly detect if the front passenger's seat is occupied. As a result, it could deploy the front passenger's airbag incorrectly or fail to deploy it, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Make sure that no wet objects (such as a wet hand towel) and no fluids come into contact with the front passenger's seat cushion. If the front passenger's seat becomes wet, dry it immediately. Make sure no electronic devices (such as a laptop or a retrofitted seat heater) are on the front passenger's seat. Do not transport any objects on or under the front passenger's seat.
- Seat covers or protective covers may prevent the advanced airbag system from correctly detecting child safety seats or passengers in the front passenger's seat. You must not use seat covers or protective covers on the front passenger's seat that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with an advanced airbag system.

Child safety seats

General information

When installing and using child safety seats, follow the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable state and federal regulations, and the manufacturer instructions for the child safety seat. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

You can also obtain useful and current information from the following sources:

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
http://www.safekids.org

SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

Audi Customer Experience Center
https://www.audiusa.com/help/contact-us
https://www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/models/layer/contact.html

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child safety seat that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

- Children ages 12 and under must be transported using the appropriate child safety seat. Note differences in regulations between states and countries. Applies to Coupe: Also follow the information about the correct seating position on the rear bench seat ⇨ *page 49*.
- Child safety seats secured incorrectly in the vehicle may cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- Children or babies must not under any circumstances be held on the lap of the driver or other passengers while driving.
- Do not secure more than one child in a child safety seat.
- Never allow a child to sit in a child safety seat unsupervised.
- Never allow children to ride unsecured in the vehicle or to stand or kneel on the seats while driving. In the event of an accident, a child could be propelled through the vehicle. This can cause serious or fatal injuries for the child and passengers.
- If children use an incorrect seating position while driving, they have a higher risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or accident. This especially applies to children in the front passenger's seat or children who have their head near the side airbag deployment area, if the airbag system is deployed during an accident. This incorrect seating position can cause severe or even fatal injuries.
- Applies to: Coupe: Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child safety seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child safety seat.
- The rear side of a forward-facing child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- Applies to: Coupe:Always make sure that the backrest on the seat where the child safety seat is installed is securely locked in place and cannot move forward. Otherwise, the backrest where the child safety seat is secured could move forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
- NEVER use a rear-facing child safety seat on a seat with an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG; this could cause DEATH or SERIOUS INJURIES to a CHILD.
  - Applies to: Coupe: Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats.
  - If you use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF stays on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- If you use a forward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. While doing this, make sure the seat can be adjusted all the way. A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.
- Replace the child safety seat after an accident because there could be damage that is not visible.
- Even if a child is not sitting in the child safety seat, the child safety seat must be secured. An unsecured child safety seat may be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden braking maneuvers or an accident.

Correct positioning for children

Always secure children in a child safety seat designed for the body size, weight, and age of the child.

You can secure child safety seats in your vehicle using the safety belts.

Applies to Coupe: You can also secure child safety seats to the LATCH anchors and to the top tether anchors. Depending on the child safety seat, it may also be necessary to secure it to the top tether anchor. In Canada, it is required by law to secure forward-facing child safety seats to the top tether anchors on the rear seats.

Applies to: Roadster: There are no top tether anchors installed in your vehicle. Do not use any child safety seats or booster seats that require top tether anchors.

Always transport children in the rear seats

Applies to: Coupe

Accident statistics show that children that are secured correctly in the rear seats are safer than in front seats. Always transport children in suitable child safety seats secured on the rear seats.

Children in the front passenger's seat

If you use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 56, Advanced airbag system*. If you must secure a forward-facing child safety seat, move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. While doing this, make sure the seat can be adjusted all the way.

Only switch to a larger child safety seat when absolutely necessary

Switch to a larger child safety seat only when absolutely necessary. Secure your child using a safety belt without a child safety seat only if all of the following statements are true:

- The child is large enough to sit upright in the seat
- The child is able to sit with his or her back resting completely on the seat backrest
- The child is able to sit with his or her knees bent over the edge of the seat surface
- The child is able to sit with both of his or her feet completely touching the floor in the footwell
- The lap portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the hip area and never over the stomach
- The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the center of the shoulder and the chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or over the neck or face.
- The child is able to maintain this seating position throughout the entire trip

Read and follow the important information and warnings regarding the correct use of safety belts ⇨ *page 50*.

Tips

- Child safety seats can also be secured to seats with side airbags. In the event of an accident, children can also be protected by the side airbags if the child is correctly secured in a suitable child safety seat that is attached correctly. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– Applies to: Coupe: The lower LATCH anchors as well as the safety belt may be required to correctly install some child safety seats. Using both at the same time is permitted, provided that the fastening systems or safety belts do not impair those in an adjacent seating position.
– All child safety seats are constructed so that they can be secured using the lap safety belt in the vehicle.

Securing child safety seats to the lower LATCH anchors

Applies to: Coupe



Applies to: Coupe
Fig. 64 Rear bench seat: lower LATCH anchors

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 58*.

In the United States and Canada, child safety seats can be secured without safety belts using the LATCH system. LATCH stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, similar systems are called UCRA, LUAS, or UAS.

The lower LATCH anchors in your vehicle are located on the seats of the rear bench seat between the seat surface and the backrest. These seating locations each have two lower LATCH anchors that can be used to secure a LATCH child safety seat. Marking points with a ⇨ *fig. 64* symbol are located on the covers for the lower LATCH anchors. You can locate the LATCH anchors using the marking points.

▸ Remove the covers from both LATCH anchors.
▸ Secure the unused safety belt that is within range of the child. To do this, fasten the safety belt for the seat where the child safety seat will be installed. Activate the belt retractor lock on the fastened safety belt. To do this, pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
▸ Make sure the fastened safety belt does not block access to the LATCH anchors. Otherwise, it may not be possible to secure the child safety seat to the LATCH anchors correctly.
▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
▸ Pull on the child safety seat to check if both sides are engaged correctly in the LATCH anchors.
▸ If possible, also secure the child safety seat to the respective top tether anchor in the vehicle ⇨ *page 63*.

WARNING

– The LATCH anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats with the LATCH system. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.
– A child in a child safety seat could play with the unused safety belts and then become entangled in them, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always secure the unused safety belt so that it is not within reach of children in child safety seats.

Tips

The LATCH anchors are designed for a total weight (child and child safety seat combined) up to 65 lbs (29 kg). If the total weight is greater than this, the child safety seat must be secured with the vehicle safety belt.

Securing child safety seats with a safety belt

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 58*. The front passenger's seat is a dangerous location for a child, even with an advanced airbag system. If you use a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 60, Correct* ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

positioning for children and ⇨ *page 56, Advanced airbag system*.

Securing child safety seats

- If you secure a child safety seat to the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the highest position.
- Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- If necessary, activate the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 62*.
- If the child safety seat is secured on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest until it rests flat against the child safety seat. Also make sure that the upper safety belt fixture is behind the child safety seat.
- Applies to: Coupe: If you secure a child safety seat on the rear seat, also secure it to the correct top tether anchor if possible ⇨ *page 63*.

Activating the belt retractor lock

If you secure a child safety seat using the vehicle safety belt, you must activate the belt retractor lock. Follow the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.

The belt retractor lock prevents the safety belt from becoming loose while driving, which could result in the child safety seat no longer being adequately secured.

- Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. While doing so, pull out the safety belt. Insert the safety belt into the belt latch that belongs to that seat until it audibly locks.
- Pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- Push the child safety seat into the seat and allow the belt to retract more.
- Make sure that the child safety seat cannot move more than 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Deactivating the belt retractor lock

- Unbuckle the safety belt from the belt latch.
- Remove the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- Allow the safety belt to retract completely. The belt retractor lock is deactivated.

WARNING

- A safety belt that is not locked by the belt retractor lock or a locking device cannot secure a child safety seat while driving or in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always make sure the belt retractor lock on the safety belt is activated if the child safety seat manufacturer instructions require it.
- Due to the risk of fatal injury, never place a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger's airbag is switched on.
- For the child safety seat to offer the maximum protection, it is especially important to route the vehicle safety belt correctly. Always follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer for routing the safety belt correctly. Incorrectly fastened safety belts can cause injuries, even during minor accidents.

OwnersManuals2.com

Additionally securing a child safety seat to the top tether anchor

Applies to: Coupe



Fig. 65 Rear backrest: top tether anchors to secure a child safety seat with an upper belt

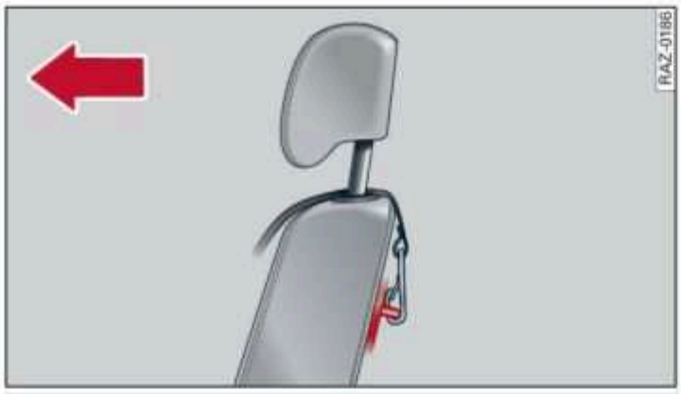


Fig. 66 Rear backrest: securing the upper belt to the top tether anchor

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 58*.

There is a top tether anchor behind every seat in the rear bench seat to additionally secure a child safety seat with an upper belt.

- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper strap on the child safety seat toward the rear.
- ▸ Fasten the belt to the top tether anchor ⇨ *fig. 66*. While doing this, make sure the belt is not twisted and is not running over any sharp edges.
- ▸ Pull the belt tightly so that the child safety seat rests at the top of the seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

The top tether anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats equipped with an upper strap. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

OwnersManuals2.com

Storage and convenience

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use multiple power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage from the sockets must not exceed a total of 120 watts. Do not connect multiple devices to the sockets in the vehicle at the same time.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB ports

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. Depending on the vehicle, the USB ports may be labeled with one of the following symbols: ⇠, ⇠, or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.

Tips

Do not connect any other devices to the sockets when using the compressor* provided by the factory ⇨ *page 240*. The power consumption in the sockets may be temporarily exceeded when using the compressor*.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders

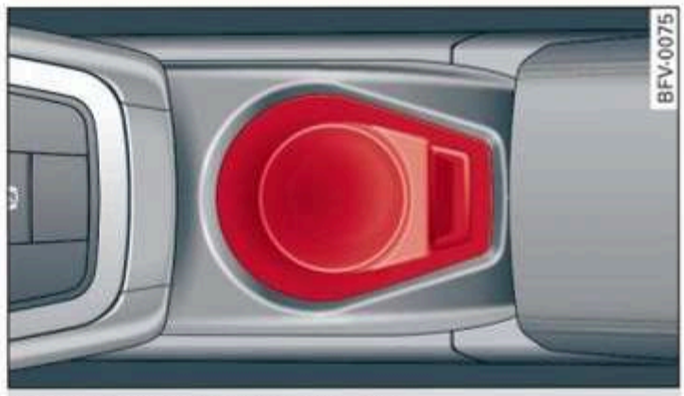


Fig. 67 Center console: cup holder

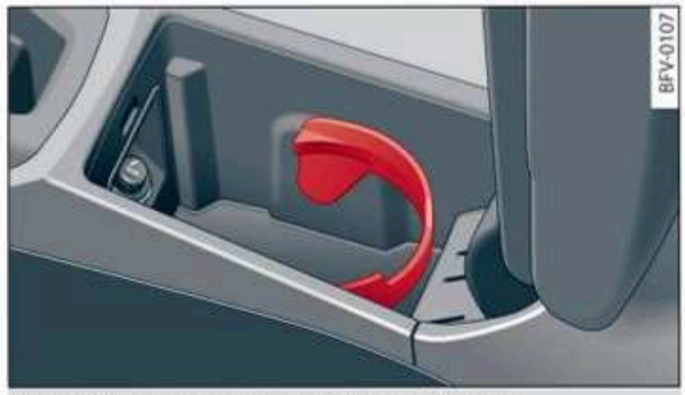


Fig. 68 Center armrest folded up: cup holder

Your vehicle has an open cup holder in the center console ⇨ *fig. 67* and there may be an additional cup holder under the center armrest ⇨ *fig. 68*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Cup holder under the center armrest*

- ▸ Fold the center armrest* upward ⇨ *page 48*.
- ▸ To use the cup holder, fold the plastic bracket to the rear.

WARNING

- Spilled hot liquid can increase the risk of accidents and injuries. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- Never drive with containers that contain hot liquid such as coffee or tea. The hot liquid could spill and cause burns during a collision, sudden braking or other vehicle movement. Spilled hot liquid can also increase the risk of accidents and injuries.
- Only use soft containers in the cup holders. Hard cups and glasses can increase the risk of injury during a collision.
- Never use the cup holder or the adapter as an ashtray because this is a fire hazard.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Storage areas and compartments

Depending on vehicle equipment, there are a variety of storage areas, compartments, and retainers, such as the glove compartment, for safely storing and securing objects.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of injury, make sure all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
- Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
- Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.
- Applies to: Coupe: No heavy or hard objects may be placed on the storage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
- Applies to: Coupe: Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.

Note

Applies to: Coupe

Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely fastened in the luggage compartment. Note the following to maintain good vehicle handling:

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Stow heavy luggage as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- ▸ Use non-elastic cords attached to the tie-downs to secure objects.

WARNING

- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them at the tie-downs. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.
- If pieces of luggage or objects are secured to the tie-downs with unsuitable or damaged straps, this can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
- When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 261*.
- Never secure a child safety seat to the tie-downs.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked inside and may not be able to escape by themselves.
- Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 50*.
- Applies to: Coupe: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely fastened when in use to reduce the risk of an accident.
- Applies to: Coupe: The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.
- Applies to: Coupe: Be careful when releasing the backrest and folding it forward. To reduce the risk of being pinched, pay attention and check when folding backrests forward.
- Applies to: Coupe: The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.
- Applies to: Coupe: Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is check if it is correctly locked in place.
- Applies to: Coupe: If the safety belt becomes caught when folding the backrest back, then fold the backrest forward again and release the safety belt. Hold the safety belt with one hand and fold the backrest back carefully.

- For stability reasons, the bag hooks* can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Note

Applies to: Coupe

- If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
- When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.
- Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

- The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 224*.
- You can purchase suitable straps at specialty stores.

OwnersManuals2.com

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

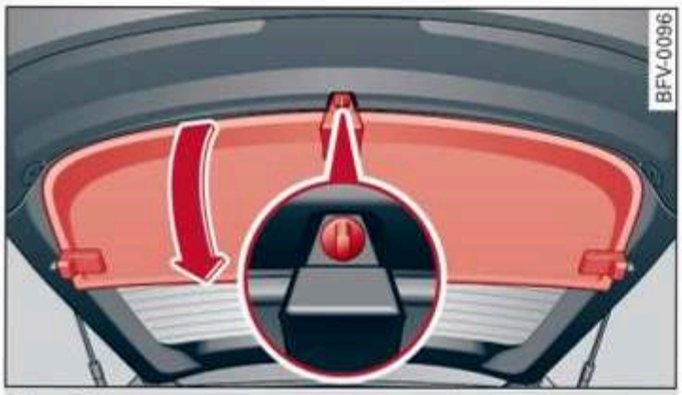


Fig. 69 Luggage compartment: cover when the luggage compartment lid is open

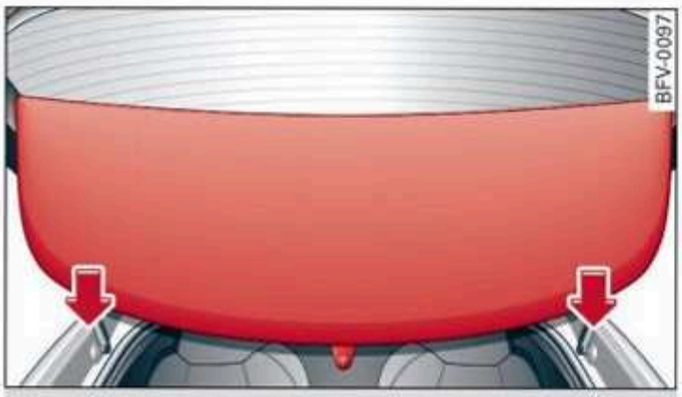


Fig. 70 Luggage compartment: luggage compartment cover unlocked

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 65*.

- To remove the luggage compartment cover, release it by turning the twist lock into the vertical position ⇨ *fig. 69*.
- Grip the side of the luggage compartment cover and pull the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- To install the luggage compartment cover, position it with the retainers on the pins and slide the cover upward.
- Turn the twist lock with gentle pressure to the vertical position.

Folding the backrests

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests



Fig. 71 Luggage compartment: backrest release lever

The backrests can be folded forward separately or together to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 65*.

- Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 71* to fold the backrest forward.
- Fold the backrest forward.
- After the transport, fold the backrest up until it locks into place.

Pass-through with bag

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and removable ski bag



Fig. 72 Luggage compartment: folding the cover upward



Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: securing the bag

OwnersManuals2.com

Long objects, such as skis, can be transported in the bag.

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 65*.

- ▸ To load the bag, open the storage compartment cover between the seat backrests ⇨ *page 27, fig. 24*.
- ▸ Open the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Press the release button and fold the cover for the pass-through up toward the luggage compartment ⇨ *fig. 72*.
- ▸ Slide the bag with the zipper located toward the rear from the luggage compartment out into the passenger compartment ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Load the ski bag.
- ▸ To secure the bag, hang the carabiner hooks on both straps in the corresponding rear tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 73*.

⚠ WARNING

After loading the bag, it must be tied down with both straps.

ⓘ Tips

– Only fold the ski bag up if it is dry.
– Lay skis in the bag with the points facing forward and ski pole points facing the rear.

Tie-downs

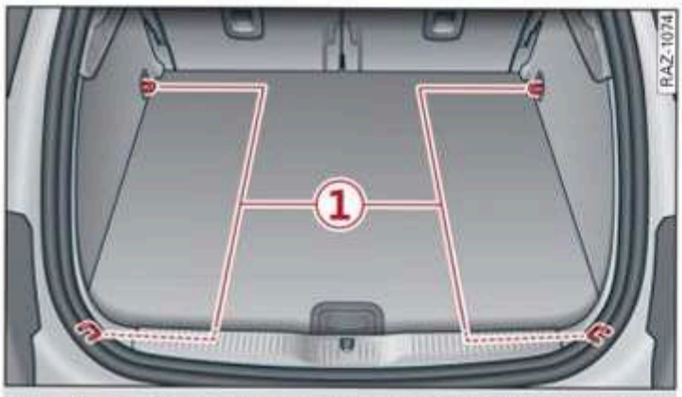


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 65*.

Tie-downs

There are tie-downs ① in the luggage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects.

- ▸ Use the tie-downs to secure the cargo.

Lowering the cargo floor



Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: floor panel



Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: foam piece

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 65*.

- ▸ Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 240*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic floor panels ①, ②, and ③.
- ▸ Turn the handle ① ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189* counter-clockwise and remove the foam piece.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.
- ▸ Reinsert the foam piece and turn the handle clockwise to tighten.
- ▸ Reinsert the cargo floor.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that you are no longer mobile in the event of a flat tire. Please note the legal regulations before removing the spare tire.

OwnersManuals2.com

Roof rack

General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack mount

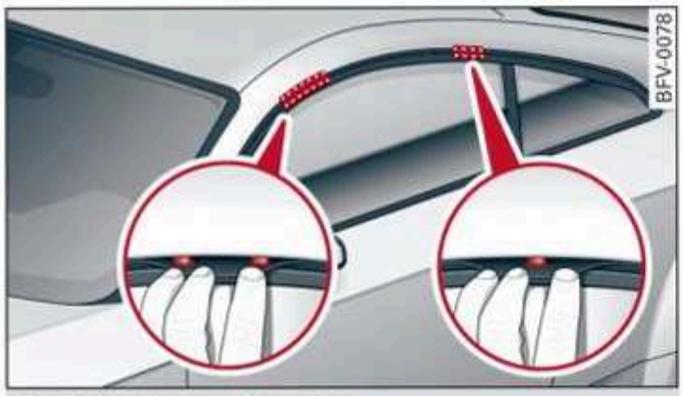


Fig. 77 Roof: mounting points

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Only roof racks that are suitable for your vehicle may be used. Audi recommends roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.
– Make sure the roof rack is mounted on the vehicle only at the specified locations ⇨ *fig. 77*.
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 261*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure the luggage compartment lid does not hit the cargo on the roof rack when you open it.

For the sake of the environment

Energy usage will increase because of the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

OwnersManuals2.com

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools, dehumidifies, and filters the air in the vehicle interior. It functions most effectively when the windows are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

The deluxe climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. In all heating mode functions except defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Active combination filter

When the fan is running, the filter will reduce particulate matter and the concentration of pollen, as well as odors in the interior.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. Have it inspected by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified electronics store.

For the sake of the environment

Reducing the amount of fuel used also reduces the amount of pollutants that enter the air.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to reduce the risk of the windows fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- If you notice that certain functions are not operating, for example the seat heater or window defogger is not heating, the energy management system may have switched these functions off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
- The flows through the vents under the rear window. Make sure the openings are not covered when placing clothing on the luggage compartment cover.

OwnersManuals2.com

Deluxe automatic climate control

Operation



Fig. 78 Deluxe automatic climate control: controls

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons or adjusted by turning the knob. When the function is switched on, the LED in the respective button or knob turns on.

AUTO Automatic mode

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically. The automatic mode is turned on using the AUTO button. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed.

Audi recommends pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (+22 °C).

A/C Cooling mode

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The cooling system is turned on and off with the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not reduced when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically at low outside temperatures.

Blower

You can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference by turning the knob ①. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button. If the windows are foggy, press the MAX button.

Temperature

The temperature can be adjusted in small increments using the dial ②.

Air distribution

The air distribution can be adjusted using the dial ③. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The round air vents in the cockpit are adjustable ⇨ *page 72*.

To prevent the side windows from fogging over, open the side air vents and angle them toward the side.

Recirculation mode

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior ⇨ ⚠.

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically, depending on vehicle equipment. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– Pressing the button switches recirculation mode on or off manually.
– **Automatic recirculation mode**: automatic recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation**. When switched on, automatic recirculation controls the recirculation mode automatically. You must press the button if fog forms on the windows.

Pressing the button, AUTO, or the button switches recirculation mode off.

Defroster

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at 72 °F (+22 °C) or higher. The temperature is controlled automatically. Depending on the outside temperature, the A/C cooling mode may automatically switch on.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

Rear window defogger

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after 10 – 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the button for more than two seconds. This remains stored up to approximately 15 minutes after turning off the ignition.

WARNING

– You should not leave the recirculation mode on for an extended period of time. This can cause the windows to fog, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Using recirculation mode or, depending on the vehicle equipment, automatic recirculation for an extended period of time can cause the CO_2 concentration inside the vehicle to increase. This can have a negative effect on the well-being of vehicle occupants, which can increase the risk of an accident. Switch recirculation mode or automatic recirculation off and ventilate the vehicle at the first sign of unwellness.

Adjusting the vents



Fig. 79 Cockpit: adjusting the air vents

To adjust the **direction of air flow**, turn the ridged outer adjustment wheel ①.

To adjust the **amount of air flow**, move the lever ② on the air vent. To stop the air flow, move the lever all the way to the left.

Seat heating



Fig. 80 Air vents: seat heating

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Tips

- The setting for the seat heating on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
- If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

Neck heating

Applies to: vehicles with neck heating

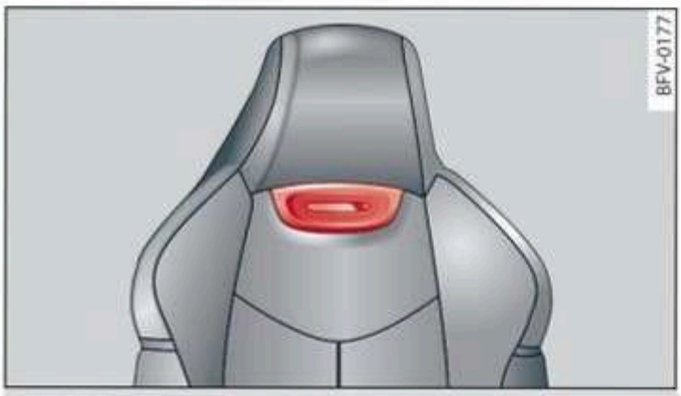


Fig. 81 Driver's seat: neck heating vents



Fig. 82 Cockpit: neck heating

The neck heating has three levels. If you turn the knob to the right, the neck heating switches on ⇨ *fig. 82*. The LEDs above the seat symbol indicate the ventilation level. Turn the knob to the left to reduce ventilation. To switch off the neck heating, keep turning the knob to the left until no LEDs are turned on.

When the power top is closed, the neck heating will switch automatically from setting 3 to setting 2 after approximately six minutes.

WARNING

- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the neck heating. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use neck heating.
- The output from the neck heating may become very hot temporarily if the air vents in the seats ⇨ *fig. 81* are covered by clothing or similar objects when the system is switched on. This can cause burns on unprotected skin exposed directly to the vents.

Tips

- The fan speed is always lower when the power top is closed than when it is open.
- Energy management ⇨ *page 110* may reduce the heat output if the battery voltage is too low.

Fluids in the A/C system

Refrigerant in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's A/C system. The sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or back of the hood.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.
	Refrigerant type
	Lubricant type

OwnersManuals2.com

Symbol	Meaning
	Refer to the service information (only available for authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities)
	The A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Make sure all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle that have been removed from old vehicles or taken from recycling.

Lubricant in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant oil used in the vehicle's A/C system. For the refrigerant oil quantity, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 260*.

WARNING

To ensure correct and safe operation, the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified and certified technicians (SAE standard J2845 and J2911).

Tips

- Never repair the A/C system evaporator with components from old vehicles or from recycling.
- New replacement evaporators for portable A/C systems must be certified and labeled as such, so that they comply with the SAE standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744.

OwnersManuals2.com

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine and other drive components.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Trailer mode

Note

Your Audi is not designed for towing a trailer. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.

Reducing the risk of vehicle damage

Note

When driving on poor roads, over curbs, and on steep ramps, make sure that components that hang below the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust system, are not struck because they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles with low ground clearance and vehicles that are heavily loaded.

Driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

- Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
- Deactivate the Start/Stop system*.
- Drive carefully and no faster than at walking speeds to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
- Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
- Do not drive in reverse.
- Do not turn the engine off.

WARNING

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes so that the full braking effect will be restored.

Note

Vehicle components such as the motor, drive system, suspension, or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. Use fresh water to clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water.

Efficient and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact, and the wear to the engine, brakes, and tires depends mostly on your driving style. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

- Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
- Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
- Make sure the tire pressure is correct.
- Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
- Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
– Utilize the engine braking effect.
– Avoid driving short distances when possible.

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.

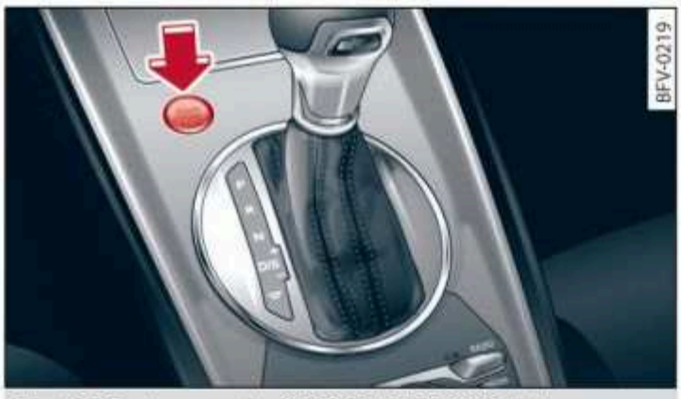


Fig. 83 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Switching the ignition on or off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Starting the engine

▸ Automatic transmission: press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the "P" or "N" position ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
– The brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. If the engine is off, you have to use more force when steering or braking. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button.

Emergency off function*

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving at speeds starting at 4 mph (7 km/h). To stop the engine, press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold it one time. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the "P" selector lever position is engaged. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
- If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. If you do not do this, the engine could be started and electrical equipment such as the power windows could be activated. This can lead to serious injuries.
- For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.

Messages

Pressing the start/stop button again will switch off the engine

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP button while driving.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The engine automatic start system has a malfunction. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. To start the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, see ⇨ *page 78, Starting the engine when there is a malfunction*.

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press the brake pedal

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Please select N or P

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine if the selector lever is not in the "N" or "P" position. The engine will not start/stop.

OwnersManuals2.com

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example, if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affecting the key or if there is a system malfunction.

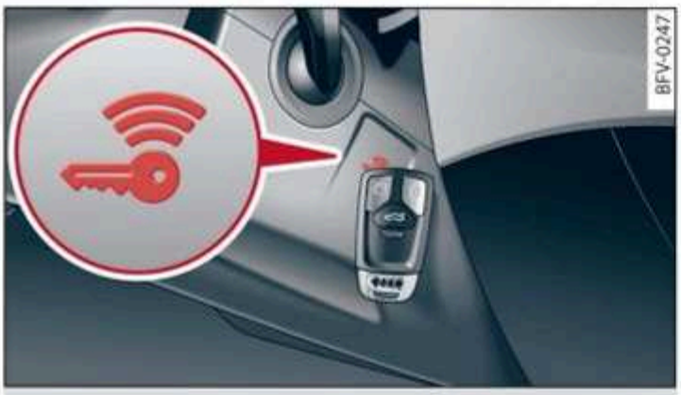


Fig. 84 Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

As long as the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can emergency start your vehicle.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- ▸ Hold the master key in the location indicated in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 84*. The engine will start.
- ▸ If the engine does not automatically start, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions. In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when stopped, for example at a traffic light.

The ignition and important assist systems such as the brake booster will remain available during the Stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

- – The driver's door must be closed.
- – The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
- – The hood must be closed.
- – The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (4 km/h) since the last time it stopped.

WARNING

- – Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
- – If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
- – To reduce the risk of injuries, make sure that the Start/Stop system is turned off when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 80*.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 80*.

Stopping and starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped. The A / A indicator light appears in the instrument cluster once the engine stops automatically.
- ▸ The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Additional information for automatic transmissions

The engine stops in the "P", "N" and "D" selector lever positions.

If you select the "R" gear during a Stop phase while pressing the brake pedal, the engine will start again.

Shift to "P" quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through "R".

You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

- Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
- The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a Stop phase.
- When you stop and the Start/Stop system turns the engine off, the ignition remains on. Make sure the ignition is switched off before you leave the vehicle or else the battery could drain.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

- Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
- Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
- Engine temperature
- Assist systems
- Driving behavior

Depending on the engine, the indicator light may appear if the engine is not stopped.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle has already been driven
- If the Start/Stop system has stopped the engine
- If the driver's door is opened
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- If the brake pedal is not pressed
- If the vehicle is stationary

In this case, the parking lights switch on in place of the low beams and the message **Side marker lights will switch off automatically in 30 minutes. See owner's manual** appears in the Infotainment system display. The side marker lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the "D" or "N" selector lever position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

OwnersManuals2.com

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off and on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.



Fig. 85 Center console: Start/Stop system button

- To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the Ⓐ OFF button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Start/stop system: deactivated. Please start engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started manually.

Start/stop system: malfunction! Function not available

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Electromechanical parking brake

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting and releasing the parking brake manually

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

- To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 81, Starting to drive*.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brakes are malfunctioning or the pedal is obstructed.

- Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The hydraulic brake system will brake all four wheels. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the "P" position.
- Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

- If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into "P" when the vehicle is stopped.
- Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the when the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
- If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
- No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Note

Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- Noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
- The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.

Starting to drive

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

- To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

If you take your foot off of the brake pedal when driving on hills, the braking force will be held for several seconds. At that time, you can start driving without the vehicle rolling backward.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the engine must be on, and the vehicle must be traveling uphill.

- To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.
- If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into "P" when the vehicle is stopped.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released, or release it if it is set. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by engaging the "P" gear. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle on inclines in every scenario (for example, on slippery or icy ground).

Automatic transmission

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled DSG transmission called S tronic. Two independent clutches transfer the power between the engine and transmission. It allows the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed, and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 86*.

Selector lever positions



Fig. 86 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The Infotainment system display shows the current selector lever position and the engaged gear.

P - Park

You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the P selector lever position, press the interlock button in the selector lever *while* pressing the brake pedal.

R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the R selector lever position, press the interlock button *while* pressing the brake pedal. The back-up lights switch on in the R position if the ignition is switched on.

N – Neutral (idle)

The transmission is in idle in this position.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. To select the S sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal D mode. The selected driving mode is shown in the Infotainment display.

In the **normal mode** "D", the transmission automatically selects the correct gear. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Select the **sport mode** "S" for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position "N" to "D", you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS.

- Before starting to drive, check if the desired selector lever position is displayed next to the selector lever.
- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never select "R" or "P" while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P") when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the "P" position.
- To decrease the risk of an accident, the selector lever must be in the P position and the parking brake must be set before opening the hood and working on a running engine. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

Note

Never let the vehicle roll downhill with engine off and the selector lever in the "N" position, because this could damage the automatic transmission and catalytic converter.

Tips

- Drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode. The Infotainment display shows "S" as the selector lever position instead of "D".
- If you accidentally select "N" while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting "D" or "S".
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the "P" position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 88*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

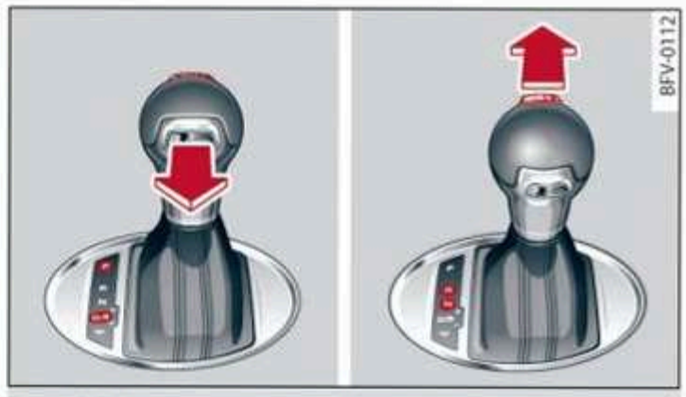


Fig. 87 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the "P" and "N" positions when the ignition is switched on. You must press the brake pedal to select another position. You must also press the interlock button if you are moving from the "P" position. The ▸

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

following message appears in the display when the selector lever is in the "P" or "N" position to remind the driver:

To select a gear, please press brake pedal and press lock button on selector lever

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the "N" position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through "N", for example from "R" to "D". This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the "N" position longer than approximately two seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

Interlock button

The interlock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever inadvertently while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the interlock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 87*.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Selector lever positions on page 83.*

Tips

- If the selector lever does not engage, there is a malfunction. The engine is disabled to prevent the vehicle from driving off unintentionally. To allow the selector lever to engage again, proceed as follows:
- Briefly press the brake pedal.
- If the vehicle does not move forward or in reverse even though a drive position is selected, proceed as follows:
- If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.
- If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

Driving tips

The transmission shifts up and down automatically when in the driving gears.

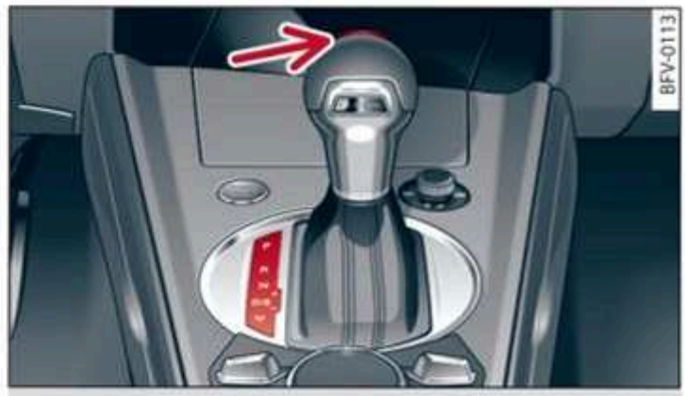


Fig. 88 Section of the center console: selector lever with interlock button

Starting the engine

▸ The selector lever must be in the P or the N position.

At low temperatures (below 14 °F (–10 °C)), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in the "P" position.

Starting from a stop

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
▸ Start the engine ⇨ *page 76*.
▸ Press and hold the interlock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as "D" ⇨ *page 82* and release the lock button.
▸ Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Various convenience functions are available for starting on hills ⇨ *page 81*.

Stopping temporarily

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, for example at a traffic light. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep hills ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⓘ.
▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the "P" position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll.

In vehicles with a convenience key*, the message **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if gearshift is not in P** appears. A warning tone will also sound.

▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Set the parking brake.
▸ Select the "P" selector lever position.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to tiptronic mode in order to manually adjust the gears to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 86*.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" selector lever position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

– The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
– Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
– Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.
– Power is still transferred to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in the "D", "S" or "R" position or "tiptronic" mode is selected.
– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
– Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never engage the R or P selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
– Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
– Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving downhill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.
– If the engine must run while you are working in the engine compartment with the hood open, make sure a gear is not engaged. The selector lever must be firmly in the P position and locked in place and the parking brake must be set ⇨ *page 199*. Otherwise, the vehicle could begin moving when increasing the engine speed, even with the parking brake set.

ⓘ Note

– If you have to stop on an incline, always press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place to reduce the risk of the vehicle rolling backward. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing and holding the accelerator pedal. The transmission can overheat, which increases the risk of damage.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in the N position will damage the automatic transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances.
– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the or indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool ⇨ *page 87*.

– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped will damage the S tronic transmission because it is not lubricated ⇨ *page 248, Towing*.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the "D" or "S" position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed that was selected at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brakes. Because hill descent control cannot shift down farther than 3rd gear, it may be necessary to shift into tiptronic mode in very steep areas. In this case, shift manually into 1st or 2nd gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine's braking force to relieve the brakes.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or if you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 90*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic mode allows the driver to shift the gears manually.

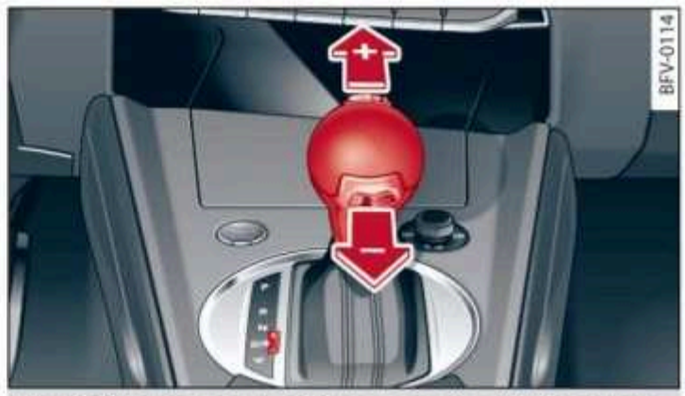


Fig. 89 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever

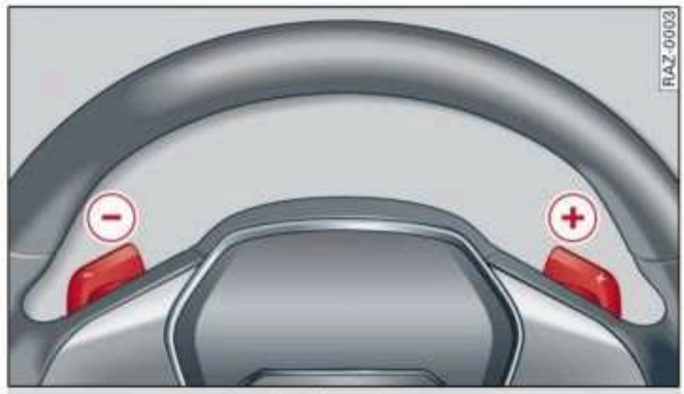


Fig. 90 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

You can shift the gears manually when in "D" mode. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode.

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into manual shifting mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- ▸ To switch to manual shifting mode, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 89*. "M" will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ Upshifting: push the selector lever forward ⊕.
- ▸ Downshifting: push the selector lever toward the rear ⊖.
- ▸ To switch back to automatic mode, tilt the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Shifting with the shift paddles

Applies to: vehicles with shift paddles

- ▸ Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 90*.
- ▸ Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle or push the selector lever toward the rear.

If you stop using the shift paddles temporarily, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode. To keep shifting manually, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side.

Tips

– The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.
– The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear and the engine utilizes its full power, if the vehicle speed and engine RPM permit. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch Control

Applies to: vehicles with Launch Control

Launch Control provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirements

– The engine must be at operating temperature.
– The steering wheel must not be turned.
– Start/Stop system* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 80*.
– ESC must be limited ⇨ *page 106*.
– Driving program "S" ⇨ *page 82* or the **Dynamic** Audi drive select* mode must be selected ⇨ *page 96*.

Using Launch Control

– Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
– With the brake pedal pressed, press the accelerator pedal all the way down with your right foot at the same time.
– Once the engine reaches a constant speed, remove your foot from the brake pedal.

Once the vehicle has started moving, reactivate the ESC so that it is fully functional.

WARNING

Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other road users will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– When accelerating using Launch Control, all vehicle components are subject to heavy loads. This can result in increased wear.
– To reduce the risk of damaging the vehicle, trailer, and cargo, avoid using launch control while in trailer towing mode.

Tips

After accelerating using the Launch Control, the temperature of some vehicle components may increase greatly. If that happens, the function will not be available for a few minutes to reduce the risk of damage. After a cool-down period, Launch Control will be available again.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

The transmission is too hot and can become damaged. Stop and let the transmission cool with the engine running (at idle) in the "P" selector lever position. Then the indicator light and the message turn off, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the indicator light and the driver message do not turn off, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other selector lever positions after starting the engine again. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Selector lever emergency release



Fig. 91 Selector lever: removing the cover

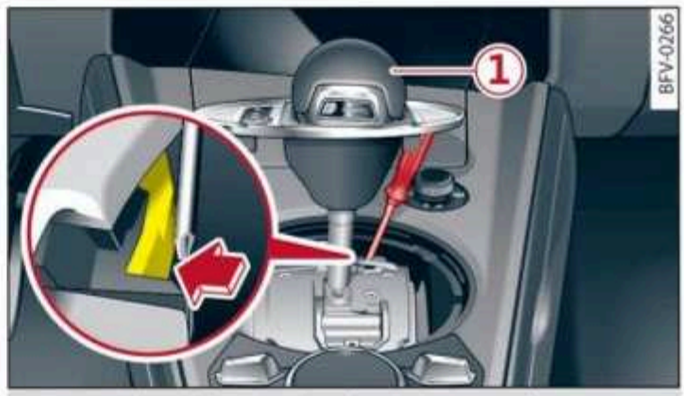


Fig. 92 Selector lever: using the emergency release to move out of the Park position

The emergency release mechanism is located in the right area under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

You will need the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to release it ⇨ *page 240*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

Removing the cover

- Set the parking brake to secure your vehicle from rolling away. If this is not possible, secure your vehicle from rolling using another method.
- Switch the ignition off. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- To loosen the shifter boot, carefully insert the flat side of the screwdriver sideways into the slit near the shifter boot ⇨ *fig. 91*.
- Carefully pry the shifter boot out with the screwdriver while gripping the boot at the fold and pulling it upward and out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 92*.
- Fold the shifter boot up around the shifter knob.

Selector lever emergency release

- Press and hold the yellow release button with the screwdriver.
- At the same time, press the release button on the selector lever ① and move the selector lever to the "N" position.

Reattaching the cover

- Clip the shift cover back into the shift gate.

WARNING

– The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

OwnersManuals2.com

Assist systems

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps the driver to stay below a specified maximum speed. A warning threshold can be set in the Infotainment system for this purpose.

Once the speed slightly exceeds the stored threshold, the speed warning system will alert the driver with an indicator in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. Once the speed drops below the stored maximum speed, the indicator will turn off.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.

Setting the warning threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning** > **Manual**.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Manually set speed limit (XY)) exceeded

The stored speed was exceeded.

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The **cruise control system** assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

- The cruise control system is only an assist system, and the driver is still responsible for controlling the vehicle. The driver is especially responsible for braking, controlling the speed, and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.

Note

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Indicator lights and messages in the speedometer inform you about the driving situation and the settings. The displays depend on the country and equipment.

Indicator lights

CRUISE / - the cruise control system is switched on and actively controls the set speed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 93 Operating lever: switching the system on

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position (2).

WARNING

If the brakes are malfunctioning (for example, overheating) while the cruise control system is switched on, the regulating functions may shut off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the speed to be maintained, or you can select the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 91, fig. 93*.
- To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position (2) while driving.
- To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button (1) on the lever.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in small increments, tap the lever up to the first level toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 91, fig. 93*.
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in larger increments, tap the lever up to the second level toward (+)/(-).
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, tap and hold the lever at the first or second level toward (+)/(-).

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and the regulated speed must be activated.

Overriding

- To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
- To resume the stored regulated speed, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward (3) (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 91, fig. 93*, or
- Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. Braking interventions and corrective actions by the system may not occur.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

If you do not want to use the cruise control system for a longer period of time, you can switch it off.

- To switch the system off, press the lever toward (3) (locked into place) ⇨ *page 91, fig. 93*. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The indicator light will turn off and the set speed will be cleared.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

If CRUISE or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the cruise control system functions may be unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. Switch the system on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can measure and analyze lap times with the lap timer in the display. The time is measured in minutes, seconds and 1/10 seconds. With lap times longer than 60 minutes, the hour is also shown and the display of 1/10 seconds is removed.

The time measurement on an individual lap ends after 99 hours , 59 minutes, and 59 seconds. A new lap starts automatically after that.

You can operate the lap timer using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. To reduce the risk of an accident, only use the lap timer functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Opening the lap timer and recording time

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer



Fig. 94 Multifunction steering wheel: controls



Fig. 95 Instrument cluster: lap times in the lap timer

Opening the lap timer

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap times**.
- Turn the left thumbwheel Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 94* until **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** appears.
- Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Timing laps

- To measure the lap time, press the left thumbwheel to confirm the **New lap** menu item. This starts timing the next lap at the same time. The last time measurement moves up to the top line ①. The current lap time is in the center line in area ③.

As long as the symbol is green during the current lap time measurement, the current time is faster than your best time to date. If the symbol is red, the current time is slower.

Displaying split time and pausing timing

- To display a split time , turn the left thumbwheel until **Split time** appears in line ④. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection. The split time appears for approximately 10 seconds in area ③. The current lap timing will continue running.
- To insert a pause ⏸ immediately after the split time, press the left thumbwheel to confirm the menu item **Back to lap time**.
- To insert a pause, turn the left thumbwheel until **Pause** appears in line ④.
- Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection. The pause symbol ⏸ appears in area ②.
- To resume timing, press the left thumbwheel again.

Meaning of the indicator in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 95*:

①	Display of last recorded time
②	Symbols: - start of time recording - slowest recorded time - fastest recorded time - split time - ⏸ pause
③	Current time measurement
④	Menu: - **Start lap 1 by driving off** - **Start by driving off** - **New lap** - **Split time** - **Pause** - **Cancel lap** - **Reset times**

Evaluating or resetting times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

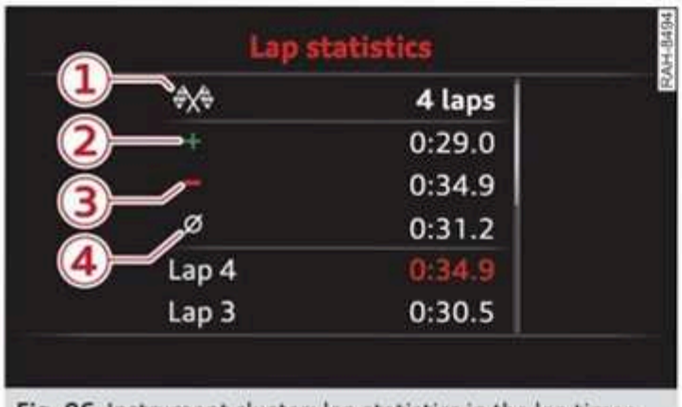


Fig. 96 Instrument cluster: lap statistics in the lap timer

You can evaluate the fastest, slowest and average lap times.

After evaluating the lap times, you can continue the current timing round or start over, meaning start lap 1 again.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap statistics**. The display shows the fastest lap +, the slowest lap − and the average lap time Ø.
- Turn the thumbwheel down or up to display the individual lap times.
- To resume the timing that was started, press the left thumbwheel again.
- To reset the timing to zero, press the left control button on the multifunction steering wheel. Turn the left thumbwheel and select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame). Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection.
- Press the left thumbwheel to restart the lap timer for a new lap timing, if needed.
- Press the MENU button to exit the lap timer.

Evaluation legend ⇨ *fig. 96*:

①	: total number of laps
②	+ : fastest lap time
③	− : slowest lap time
④	Ø : average lap time

Tips

– A maximum of 30 lap times can be measured.
– If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.
– Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
– The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

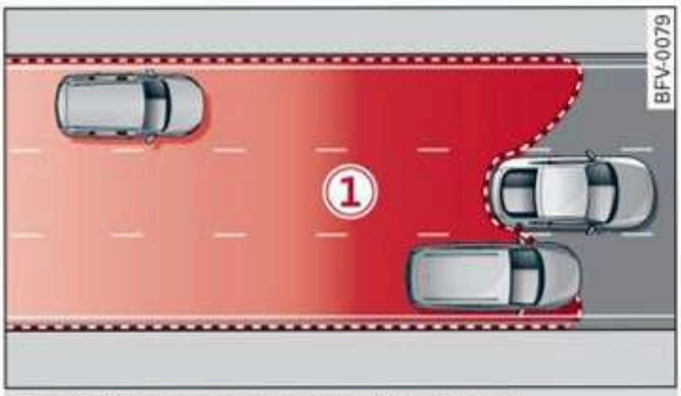


Fig. 97 Diagram: coverage area of the sensors

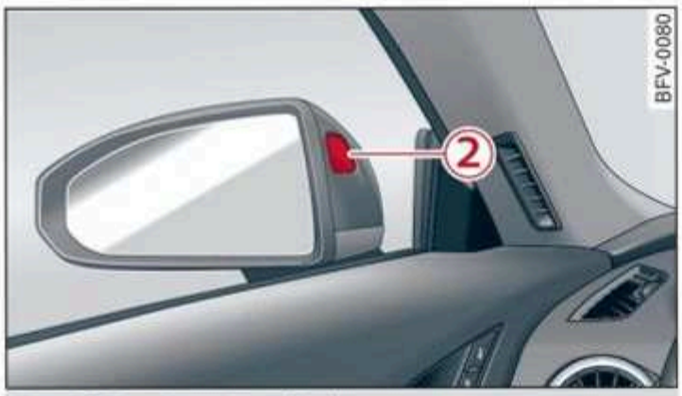


Fig. 98 Exterior mirror: display

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 97*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 98* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If you activate the turn signal, side assist *warns* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror blinks brightly. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 95*.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 96*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

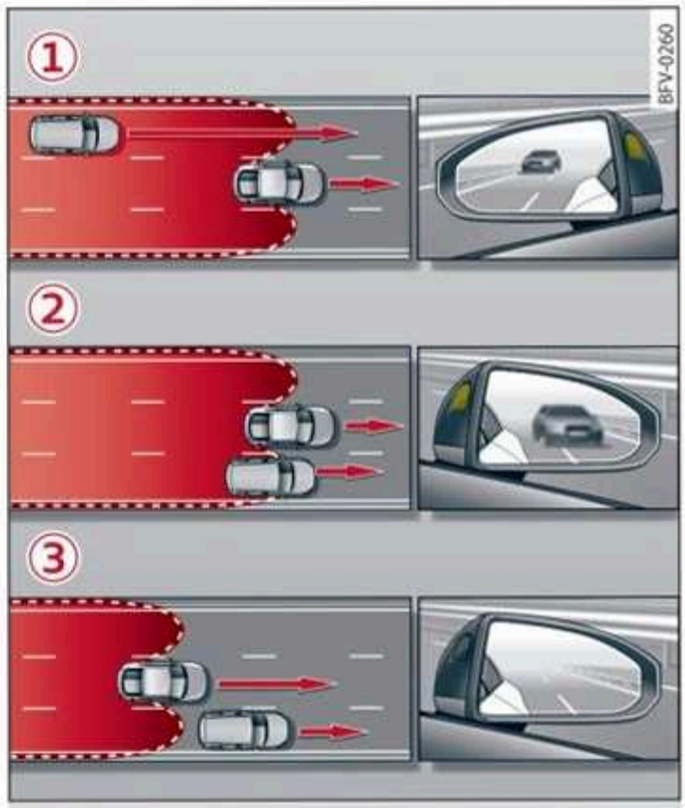


Fig. 99 Driving situations and exterior mirror display



Fig. 100 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors (example)

OwnersManuals2.com

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

① Approaching vehicles

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the outside mirror will turn on.

② Vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle

Vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

③ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

- If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
- If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
- If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
- In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 100* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 233*.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limitations. External sources of interference, for example from other vehicles, can impair sensor functionality. The assist systems may be limited or may not function as expected.
- In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  - If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  - In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  - On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

- If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
- The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**

If the system is activated, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage.

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If the side assist switches off automatically, a message appears in the Infotainment system display.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensor vision is impaired. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 94, fig. 100*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: malfunction! Please contact Service

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can switch the setting, for example from sporty to comfortable. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty drivetrain setting with comfortable steering. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

Using Audi drive select incorrectly can lead to collisions, other accidents and serious injuries.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features.

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements.

Suspension control (Audi magnetic ride)*

The suspension control uses sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, as well as information about the road surface, driving speed, and load. With drive select, you can adjust the suspension control to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Tips

- Certain vehicle settings will be reset when the ignition is switched off.
- In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can choose between comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.



Fig. 101 Center console: drive select button

- ▸ Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster/Infotainment system display. Or
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired setting.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the engine.

Comfort - Results in a comfort-oriented vehicle calibration

Auto - Provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - Gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 98*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Adjusting the Individual mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

- Press the drive select button > **Individual** > right control button, or
- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button>**Audi drive select** > **Individual** > right control button

After you have closed the settings, you will automatically drive in the **Individual*** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	Comfort	Auto	Dynamic
Engine/trans.	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Suspension control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	balanced	sporty
quattro*	balanced	balanced	sporty

OwnersManuals2.com

Parking aid

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **rear parking system** is an audible parking aid that warns you of obstacles behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 99*.

The **parking aid plus** assists you while parking by audibly and visually warning you of objects detected in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 100*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 101*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The systems cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking aid may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 233*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Maintain enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust
- Audi recommends practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume of the signals.
- What appears in the display is slightly delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the parking aid to operate.

Rear parking system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system

The rear parking system is an audible aid.

Description

There is a sensor in the rear bumper cover. If these detect an obstacle, audible signals warn you. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 233*.

The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

Rear	Side	3 feet (0.90 m)
	Center	5.2 feet (1.60 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue backing up ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 99*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 99*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Activating

The rear parking assist activates automatically when the reverse gear is engaged. A brief tone will sound.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

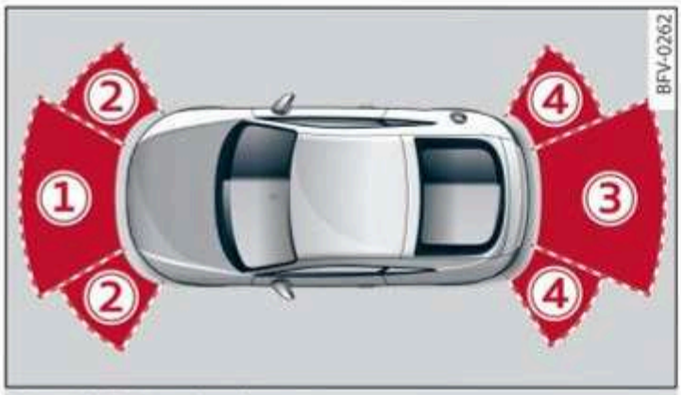


Fig. 102 Principle of operation

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 233*.

The display field begins approximately at:

①	4 feet (1.20 m)
②	3 feet (0.90 m)
③	5.2 feet (1.60 m)
④	3 feet (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 99*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 99*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

OwnersManuals2.com

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus



Fig. 103 Center console: parking aid button



Fig. 104 Optical distance display

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 103*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Activating automatically

The parking aid is activated automatically at speeds less than 6 mph (10 km/h) and when approaching an obstacle from approximately 3.1 feet (95 cm) away. There are audible signals when approximately 1.6 feet (50 cm) away from the obstacle. If you press the P button to switch the parking aid off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
– The ignition is switched off and back on again
– The parking brake is set and then released
– The selector lever must be in the "P" position.

Segments in the visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) ⇨ *fig. 104* help you to determine the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle. The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 99*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 99*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

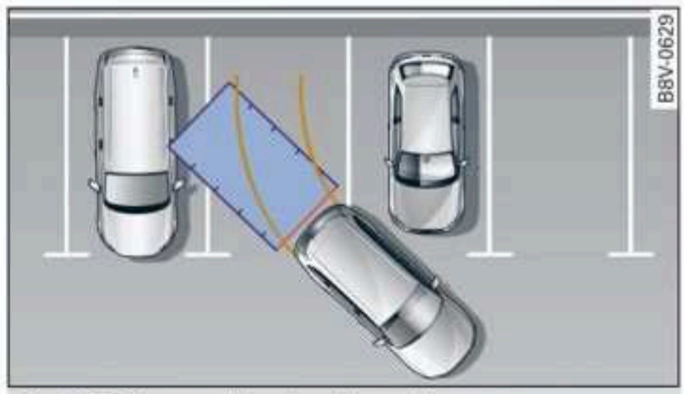


Fig. 105 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

OwnersManuals2.com

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera



Fig. 106 Diagram: area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 107 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 107* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can impair the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 233*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 106*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are in area ②, which is not covered, are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 99*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  - For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  - If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  - If driven toward protruding objects.
  - If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 99*.
- The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

- ▸ Shift into reverse, or
- ▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 101, fig. 103*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- ▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- ▸ Press the P button, or ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume of the signals and the display ⇨ *page 103*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.



Fig. 108 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space



Fig. 109 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the vehicle's direction of travel. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space ⇨ *fig. 108*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 feet (1 meter). The blue surface is a static display and represents an extension of the vehicle perimeter to the rear.
▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 102*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 102*. Area ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Signal tones

Front volume - Volume for the front area

Rear volume - Volume for the rear area

Entertainment fader - The volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on

Tips

– The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.
– The new level is demonstrated briefly* when the volume is adjusted.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Rear parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

There is a system malfunction if the LED in the P button blinks when switching on the system. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse. As long as the error is ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

active, you can display the error messages in the second tab of the driver information system.

Parking aid plus*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ① and ② ⇨ *page 100, fig. 102* are shown. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ③ and ④ are shown.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

OwnersManuals2.com

Intelligent Technology

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the motor torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle. When the ESC engages, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This will increase the driving stability.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

- The driver presses the accelerator pedal
- The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
- The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. There is still a risk of accidents because the ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions.
- Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in motor power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

The ESC is automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on.



Fig. 110 Upper center console: button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC will be limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the button briefly.	Press and hold the button longer than three seconds.	Press the button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	and **ESC OFF*** turn on.	turns off or and **ESC OFF*** turn off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Limited stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): on**

WARNING

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.
– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.
– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

– If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning, systems with an automatic braking intervention function may not be fully available. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on by the system. The ESC may switch on automatically and cannot be operated with the button.

Brakes

General information

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Braking effect

The response time from the brakes depends on the weather and environmental conditions. To ensure the optimal braking effect, the brake system is cleaned at regular intervals. This is done by applying the brake pads to the brake rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds when the windshield wipers are switched on.

If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent deceleration rates.

The break-in period for new ceramic brakes may be significantly longer than for standard brake rotors. The properties of the material may also cause noise, especially when driving at lower speeds. Ceramic brakes also absorb more moisture in wet conditions. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

⚠ WARNING

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
– Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– During automatic braking maneuvers, the brake pedal may move downward automatically. To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

Note

– Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

– Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting the "S" driving program ⇨ *page 82*. This reduces the load on the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.
– Also refer to the information about brake fluid ⇨ *page 208*.

Messages

BRAKE / Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / and also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution. If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the other safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / Warning! No brake booster function

If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Other indicator lights

When you switch the ignition on, the BRAKE / indicator light turns on briefly to check the function. If the indicator light does not turn on, there is a system malfunction.

If BRAKE / stays on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

WARNING

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction in the steering system. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Tips

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which can activate when driving through curves ⇨ *page 105*.

The all-wheel drive system is designed for high motor power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can "hydroplane" if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the motor RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Rear spoiler

Applies to: vehicles with retractable rear spoiler



Fig. 111 Center console: button for the rear spoiler

The rear spoiler increases driving stability. The rear spoiler extends automatically at speeds above approximately 75 mph (120 km/h). It will retract automatically when the speed drops below approximately 50 mph (80 km/h).

You can also extend and retract the rear spoiler manually.

- Extending: press briefly.
- Retracting: press and hold when driving at speeds up to approximately 10 mph (20 km/h). At speeds from approximately 10 mph (20 km/h) to 75 mph (120 km/h), press briefly.

Messages

If the or turns on and a corresponding message appears, the rear spoiler may not be able to extend due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive faster than 85 mph (140 km/h).

The rear spoiler may be blocked. Clean the rear spoiler compartment ⇨ *page 234*, close all vehicle doors, the luggage compartment lid, and the hood, and wait several minutes until the vehicle has completely turned off. If the indicator light ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

turns on again the next time the engine/motor starts, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

WARNING

- Make sure that the rear spoiler is extended at speeds above 85 mph (140 km/h). Otherwise, the reduced driving stability will increase the risk of an accident.
- When extending and retracting the rear spoiler, make sure there are no persons or objects within the spoiler range to reduce the risk of injury.

Note

- To reduce the risk of damage, do not press on the rear spoiler if pushing the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of damage, never lean against the rear spoiler or place heavy pressure on it.
- To reduce the risk of damage when extending or retracting the rear spoiler, make sure the luggage compartment lid is closed and there is nothing in the way of the rear spoiler.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

- If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

OwnersManuals2.com

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends only using certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination or pairing a mobile device, while the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

- Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.
- This also applies to operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not allow the visual or audio signals from a mobile device to distract you from traffic, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Introduction



Fig. 112 MMI control panel: overview

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation* and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system*.

MMI control panel overview

① Control knob with joystick function* 112
② MMI touch control pad* 114
③ Left control button 113
④ Right control button 113
⑤ Buttons for opening menus directly 112
⑥ MENU button 112
⑦ BACK button 112

MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with On/Off knob with joystick function



Fig. 113 MMI control panel: On/Off knob with joystick function

Switching the MMI on or off

The MMI can be manually switched on and off.

Switching on manually

- Press the On/Off knob ① briefly, or
- Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* or one of the buttons to open the menus directly ⑤ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*.

Switching off manually

- Press and hold the On/Off knob ① until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does not switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Additional functions

- **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ①.
- **Muting**: press the On/Off knob ① briefly. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: briefly press the On/Off knob ① toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
- **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example, tracks)**: press the On/Off knob ① longer toward the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio systems so that signals outside of the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

MMI operation

Selecting and confirming a function



Fig. 114 Control knob: operation

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob ① to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).
- **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob ②.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*.

Opening a main menu/menu



Fig. 115 Infotainment system: main menu

Opening the main menu

- Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*. The MMI menu (such as **Radio**) is displayed. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button to directly open the menus ⑤ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO). Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

OwnersManuals2.com

Opening the selection menu/options menu with the control buttons

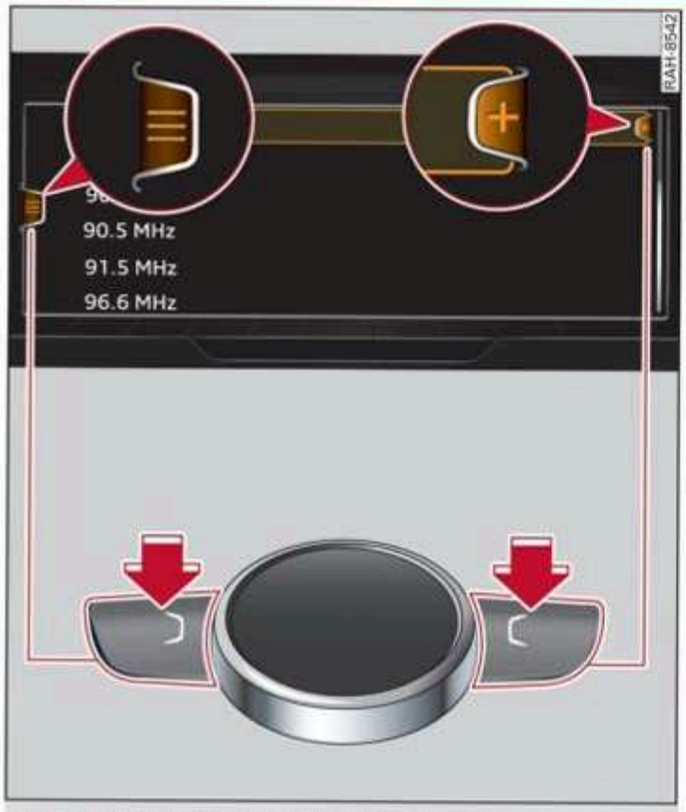


Fig. 116 MMI control panel: control buttons

Selection menu

Requirement: the Selection menu symbol must appear in the Infotainment system display.

Through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Opening the selection menu

- Press the left control button. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Options menu

Requirement: the Options menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display.

Using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Opening the options menu

- Press the right control button. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

Following the path

- Press the RADIO button.
- Press the left control button.
- Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
- Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.

The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

MMI touch

MMI touch control pad

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 117 MMI touch: entering the navigation destination

You can enter data using handwriting recognition on the MMI touch control pad. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The MMI touch control pad ② ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* is located on the control knob ① ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 118 Infotainment system: display when MMI touch is active

The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers and the symbol ① must appear in the Infotainment system display.

Basic input

- Write in individual upper case or lower case letters or numbers/characters on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A symbol that is recognized clearly by the system is displayed in the Infotainment system display ② ⇨ *page 113, fig. 117*, confirmed with an audible signal if necessary, and transferred to the input field.

Entering spaces

- Move your finger from left to right on the MMI touch control pad.

Deleting characters

- Move your finger from right to left on the MMI touch control pad.

Deleting characters quickly

- Move your finger quickly from right to left on the MMI touch control pad.

Selecting the input suggestion

- Press the control knob.

Switching directly to the results list

- Turn the control knob to the left or to the right.

Opening the speller

- Select: the right control button > **Open speller**. Text or numbers are entered using the speller ⇨ *page 118*.

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

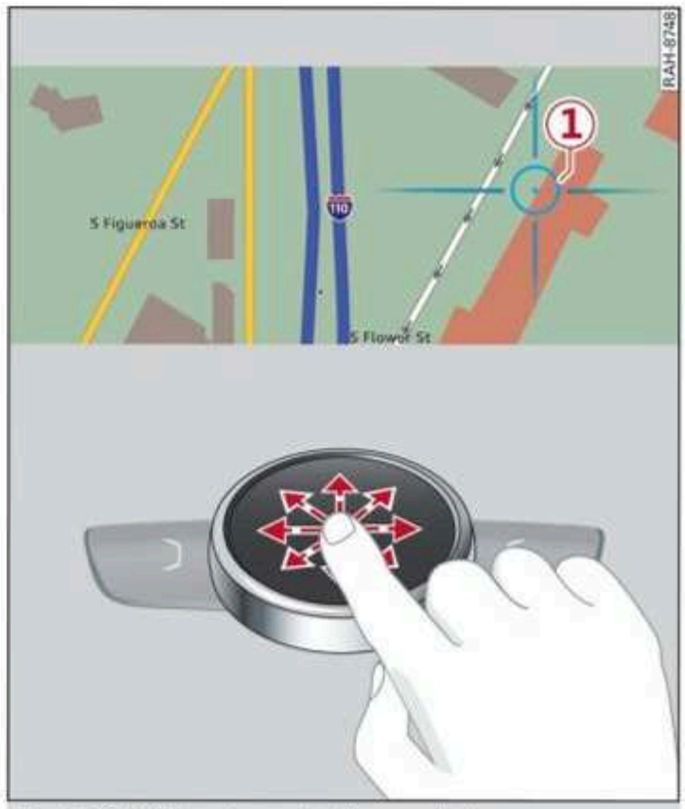


Fig. 119 MMI touch: moving the crosshairs

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Showing and hiding the crosshairs

- Press the control knob to show the crosshairs ①.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to hide the crosshairs again.

Moving the crosshairs on the map

- When the crosshairs are visible ①, drag one finger in the desired direction across the MMI touch control pad.

Moving the crosshairs quickly

- When the crosshairs are visible ①, drag one finger quickly in the desired direction across the ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

MMI touch control pad. The crosshairs will come to a stop after several seconds.

Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

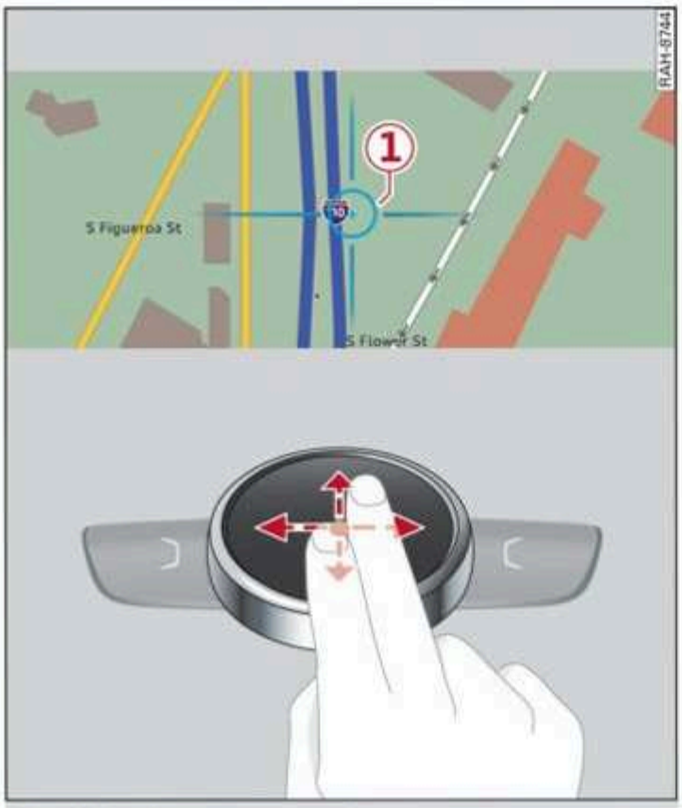


Fig. 120 MMI touch: moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Showing and hiding the crosshairs

- Press the control knob to show the crosshairs ①.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to hide the crosshairs again.

Moving the standard map or satellite map*[1)]

- When the crosshairs are visible ①, drag two fingers in the desired direction across the MMI touch control pad.

Moving the map quickly

- When the crosshairs are visible ①, drag two fingers quickly in the desired direction across the MMI touch control pad. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

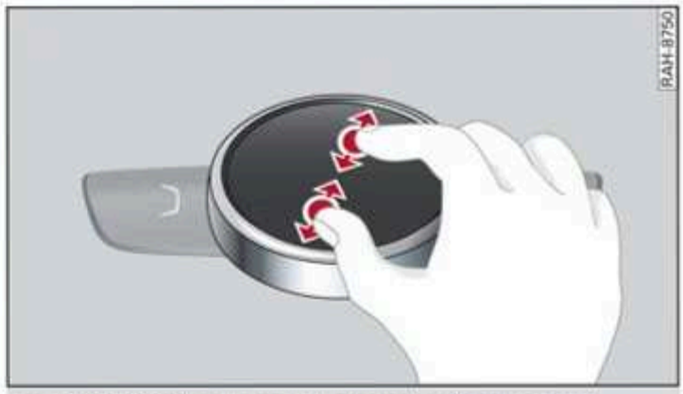


Fig. 121 MMI touch: zooming in and out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Zooming in/out on the map

- Press the control knob to show the crosshairs.
- Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers together or push them apart.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ to hide the crosshairs ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: the **Balance/fader** function must be selected ⇨ *page 193*.

Moving the crosshairs for sound focus

- Move your finger on the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction.

Saving the position of the crosshairs

- Press the control knob twice, or
- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112*.

1) Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

OwnersManuals2.com

Using the DVD main menu

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch and DVD drive

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 177*. The DVD main menu is shown.

Selecting a menu item

- Move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.

Confirming a selection

- Press the control knob.

Tips

The volume of the prompts for the MMI touch can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 194*.

Control knob with joystick function

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with control knob with joystick function

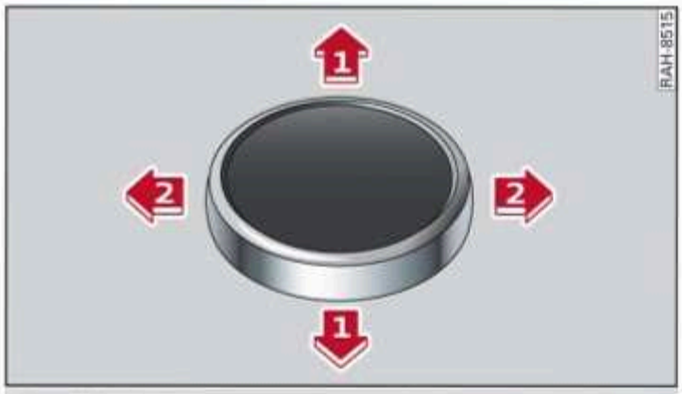


Fig. 122 Control knob with joystick function: operating concept

You can push the control knob up or down ① or to the right or left ②.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with control knob with joystick function

Opening and closing the selection menu

- Push the control knob toward the left to open the selection menu ⇨ *page 113*.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to return to the function one level up, or
- Push the control knob to the right to close the selection menu.

Opening and closing the options menu

- Push the control knob to the right to open the options menu ⇨ *page 113*.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to return to the function one level up, or
- Push the control knob to the left to close the options menu.

Displaying the input field/switching to speller input*

- Push the control knob upward to reach the beginning of a list in the central area or the input field.
- If the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 118*.

On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Displaying the input field*

- Push the control knob upward.

Displaying route guidance

- When route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 150*.

Zooming in/out on the map

- Turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.

Adjusting the sound focus*

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 193*. The crosshairs are shown.

Moving the sound focus using the crosshairs

The crosshairs can be moved horizontally and vertically.

- Turn the control knob to the right or left to move the crosshairs horizontally.
- Press the control knob to move the crosshairs vertically.
- Turn the control knob to the right or left. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ Press the control knob again to save the setting.

Using the DVD main menu

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 177*. The DVD main menu is shown.

Selecting a menu item

▸ Move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.

Confirming a selection

▸ Press the control knob.

Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Applies to: vehicles with control knob with joystick function

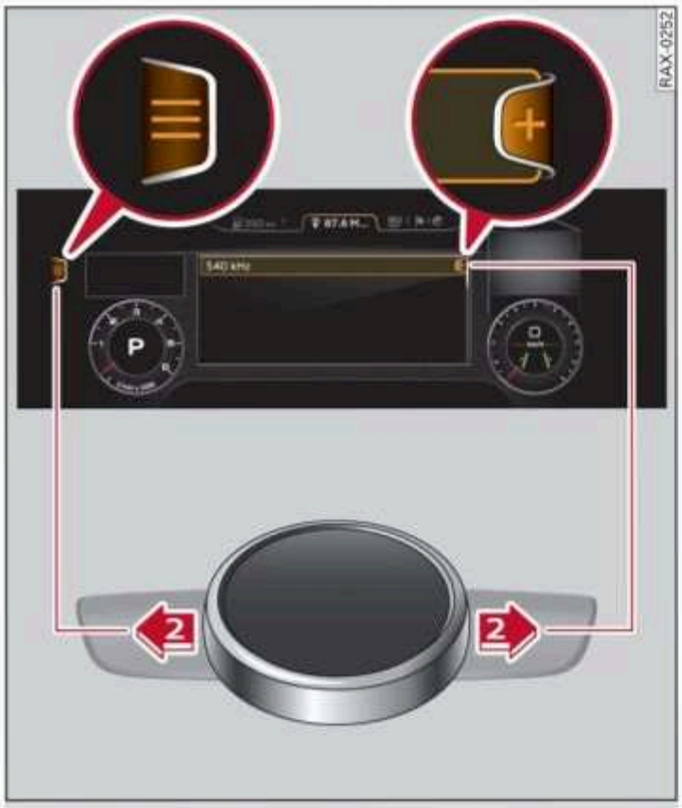


Fig. 123 Control knob with joystick function: opening the selection/options menu

Opening/closing the selection menu

Requirement: the Selection menu symbol must appear in the Infotainment system display.

▸ Push the control knob toward the left (2) to open the selection menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.
▸ Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to return to the function one level up.

Opening/closing the options menu

Requirement: the Options menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display.

▸ Push the control knob toward the right (2) to open the Options menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.
▸ Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 111, fig. 112* to return to the function one level up.

OwnersManuals2.com

Letter/number speller



Fig. 124 Infotainment system: letter/number speller

You can enter letters, numbers and symbols in the MMI using the letter/number speller. This option is available when the input field (2) is active.

Opening or closing the letter/number speller

- Move the control knob up or down when the input field is active, or:
- Select: the right control button > **Open speller/ Close speller**.

Entering characters

- Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to select the desired character.
- Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (2).
- Once you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm **LIST** (1) to go to the results list.
- Push the control knob downward.

Entering accented characters (for example, â, ç, ñ, ö)

- Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to a character.
- To open the selected accented characters, press and hold the control knob.
- Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to an accented character.
- Press the control knob to insert the accented character.
- To close the accented characters screen without selecting a character, press and hold the control knob again, or:
- Select and confirm **äöü** (7).

Deleting characters

- Select and confirm ⌫ (12).
- To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⌫ until all characters in the input field are deleted.

Entering special characters

- Select and confirm **!&?** (6), **äöü** (7) or **123** (8).
- Select and confirm the desired special character (such as a hyphen or period) by pressing the control knob.

Input assistance

In some cases, such as in Navigation*, words may be suggested* based on logical deduction during input (11).

- Push the control knob upward to confirm a suggestion.

Results list

In some cases, such as in the directory, the system will switch automatically to the results list based on logical deduction (3).

- Select and confirm a suggestion from the list. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Switching between the speller and MMI touch*

Requirement: the input field ② must be active.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is automatically activated. Simply start writing.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**LIST** or ▼	Switches to the results list.
②	Input field	Displays the current input.
③	Results list	Displays a list with suggestions based on the letters already entered.
④	⬆	Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters.
⑤	⋮	Opens additional speller options, for example **Close speller** and **Clear input field**.
⑥	**!&?**	Punctuation marks and special characters (such as hyphens or periods) are shown.
⑦	**ăõű**	Displays accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö).
⑧	**123/ABC**	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
⑨	␣	Adds a space in the input field.
⑩	Character selection	Highlights the selected character.
⑪	▲	Inserts the suggested word* when you push the control knob up.
⑫	⌫	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.

Tips

Accented characters are not available for every letter.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

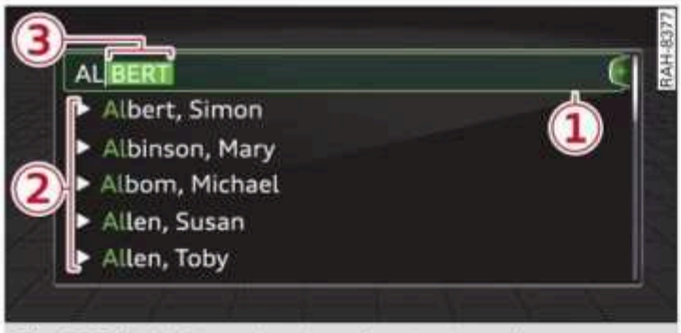


Fig. 125 Infotainment system: free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.

Depending on vehicle equipment, free text search may be available in the **Vehicle**, **Radio**, **Media**, **Phone**, **Navigation** and **Audi connect** menus.

Opening free text search

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as **Telephone**).
- If necessary, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or:
- If necessary, slide the control knob upward to open the input field ①.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is automatically activated. Simply start writing. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Free text search for an entry

▸ Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

A suggestion to complete the entry ③ may be shown depending on what is entered. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ②.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed.

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. For example, in the **Telephone*** menu, write the initials of the contact being searched, separated by a space.

Selecting the input suggestion to complete the entry

Requirement: a suggestion to complete the entry ③ must be displayed.

▸ **MMI touch input***: press the control knob.
▸ **Speller input**: push the control knob up.

Selecting an entry from the results list

▸ **MMI touch input***: turn the control knob to the right. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Speller input

▸ Select and confirm **LIST** ① ⇨ *page 118, fig. 124*, or
▸ Push the control knob downward.
▸ Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Menus and symbols

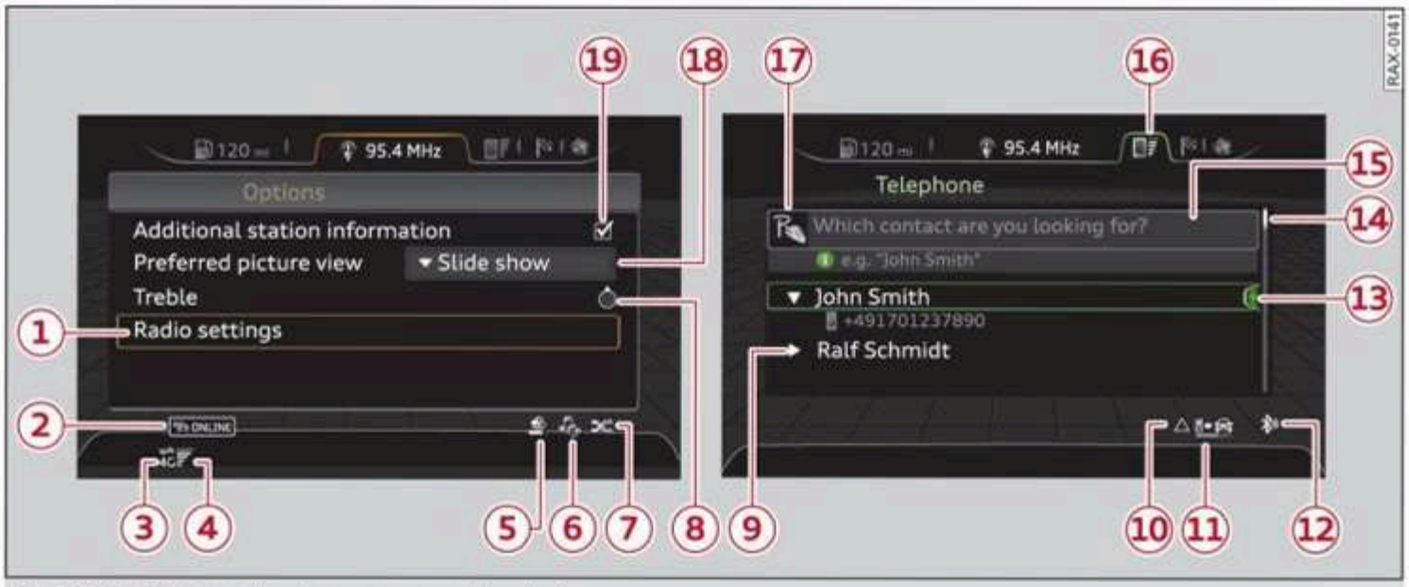


Fig. 126 Infotainment system: menus and symbols

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following menus and symbols may be displayed:

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	Selected text	Selected function.
②	**ONLINE**	Receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 162*
③	2G/3G/LTE	Network coverage for the active data connection: ⇨ *page 146* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE**: LTE network If a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection will appear in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 146*.

OwnersManuals2.com

	Symbol/Description	Description
④	Data connection signal strength bars	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM) **PUK**: enter the PUK **SIM**: insert the SIM card ⇨ *page 143*
⑤	Jukebox importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 171*.
⑥	Repeat track	The track currently playing is repeated ⇨ *page 181*.
⑦	Shuffle	All files on the playlist are played in random order ⇨ *page 181*.
⑧	Knob	Setting for the selected function by turning the control knob.
⑨	Arrow	Access information by pressing the control knob.
⑩	Roaming	Leave the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the inserted mini SIM card.
⑪	Importing process	Import/update of the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑫	Bluetooth	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 172* or ⇨ *page 129*.
⑬	Options menu	Select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item
⑭	Scroll bars	Indicates a long list. Move within lists by turning the control knob
⑮	Input field	Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 118* or the MMI touch ⇨ *page 114*.
⑯	Cell phone signal strength bars	Cell phone network signal strength for a connected cell phone ⇨ *page 129*.
⑰	MMI touch	Operation using the MMI touch control pad is possible.
⑱	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob.
⑲	Check boxes	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the control knob.

OwnersManuals2.com

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
  - Business address / Private address
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Exclude next route section / Exclude next street
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information / Train information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

RADIO

- Radio presets
- Last stations
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

RAH-8462

Fig. 127 Command overview

OwnersManuals2.com

Voice recognition system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many functions in the vehicle easily using voice commands.

Using the voice recognition system optimally

- Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- Close the doors, the windows, and the power top* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner/on the driver's safety belt* near the front interior lights. For additional information on the safety belt microphone*, see ⇨ *page 141*.
- Only the driver should speak to the system, because the handsfree microphone is aimed toward this seating position.

WARNING

- Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
- Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There is no phone call in progress, the parking system is not active, and the "R" selector lever position or reverse gear is not selected.

- **Switching on**: briefly press the button (2) ⇨ *page 14, fig. 10* on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or:
- Say the command **Cancel**.
- **Pausing**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: press the button one time (5) ⇨ *page 12, fig. 6*, or:
- Say the command **Correction**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. This command display can be switched on or off. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly and say **Help**.

Additional settings

See ⇨ *page 194, Voice recognition system*.

Tips

- The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
- You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

OwnersManuals2.com

Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated using a "**/**", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**.

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a "**>**", for example say: **Enter addresss** > (then) **Enter country/state**.

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For a **Business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **at the office**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

You can say the following commands depending on the vehicle equipment:

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect** / **Vehicle** / **Sound**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help** / **Help speech dialog system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect**
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read out text message**
Navigation functions	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address** / **Cancel route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations** / **Online destination (XY)**
Accessing favorites	**Favorites** > *follow the system prompts*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correcting the command given	**Correction**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 129* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 124*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands: ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Function	Say:
Call contact in directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) business** / **Private** / **Landline** / **cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private**
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work**
Calling a contact from your favorites list	**Telephone favorites** > *after being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialed	**Redial**
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *when prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial**
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Correction** / **Delete number**
Showing contact information	**Directory** > *say the desired contact when prompted*, for example **John Smith**
Listening to messages	**Call voicemail**
Entering the PIN (SIM)	**Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save**
Correcting the PIN entry	**Correction** / **Delete PIN**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Tips

- Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name ("first name last name" and "last name, first name") as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.
- Please note that commands can only be given for the primary phone* ⇨ *page 130*.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 142*.

Function	Say:
Accessing Audi connect services	**Audi connect** > *follow the system prompts*

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 124*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands to enter a destination:

Function	Say:
Opening the list of previous navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Accessing favorites	**Navigation favorites**
Selecting the home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with guidance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the system prompts*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country/state** / **Enter state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to contact (XY)**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"**
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to contact (XY) business** / **Private**, for example "Navigate to John Smith private"
Navigating to favorites	**Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *line contents* > *start route guidance when prompted*
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active	**Enter destination** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
Calculate alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example "restaurant"
Destination input categories	**Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking area** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering points of interest	**Nearby** / **Along the route** / **Near destination** / **Near stopover** / **In a new city** / **In a new state/country**
Entering an online destination	**Online destination (XY)**, for example "**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**"
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

OwnersManuals2.com

Requirement: you must be in the **Navigation** or **Map** menu.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands for additional settings in navigation:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map / Day map / Night map / Automatically change map color**
Map type	**2D heading-up map / 2D north-up map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map / Standard map / Traffic map / Satellite map**[a]
Showing the route list	**Route list**
Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active	**Destination information**
Speed limit prompt	**How fast can I drive here**
Setting voice guidance for active route guidance	**Voice guidance on / Voice guidance off / Voice guidance shortened / Voice guidance complete / Voice guidance traffic**
Blocking a certain section on the route	**Block route for (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles / Block next route / Avoid next section of route**

[a] Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Tips

Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on the country where you are located and which menu language you have selected.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 124*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected frequency band, you can say the following commands:

Function	Say:
Selecting the frequency band	**SiriusXM / FM / AM**
Selecting a station from the station list	**Channel (XY) / Frequency (XY) / Last stations**
Selecting a station from the presets	**Radio presets > Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY) / Frequency (XY) HD 1**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

OwnersManuals2.com

Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: you must be in the **Media** menu.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the active media, you can say the following commands:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox / CD / DVD / SD card 1 / SD card 2 / Audi music interface / iPhone / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Media source (XY)**, for example "John's player"
Selecting audio/video files from the Jukebox	**Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos**
Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface)	**Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Composers / Podcasts / Audio books**
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Folder up / Line (XY)**
Selecting shuffle	**Shuffle on / Shuffle off**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 142*.

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and external voice operation

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A cell phone must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 130*. The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally. There is no phone call in progress, the parking system is not active, and the "R" selector lever position or reverse gear is not selected.

- **Switching on**: press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Resuming dialog**: if necessary, press the button and say a new command, or:
- Select and confirm **Resume** on the MMI control panel.
- **Restarting dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new dialog during this time.
- Briefly press the button, or:
- Select and confirm **Restart speech dialog system** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or:
- Select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

Tips

- There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.
- Audi simply provides access to control your cell phone with voice operation and does not take any responsibility for the contents and commands within the external voice control.

OwnersManuals2.com

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can operate various telephone functions easily through the MMI in your vehicle.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

- Connecting a cell phone with Bluetooth
- Using two telephones
- Using the Audi phone box

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 7.9 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antennas and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 123* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally switch your engine/motor off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 111, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle.
- A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setup

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The mobile device to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile device.

- ▸ Enable the Bluetooth function and visibility on the MMI ⇨ *page 192* and the mobile phone.
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile device** > **Find new devices** > **Next**. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display, or:
- ▸ Search for the MMI on your cell phone using the Bluetooth device search.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.

- ▸ Confirm the PIN on your cell phone and on the MMI, or:
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any other system prompts on the MMI and on your cell phone. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

After connecting successfully

Information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later ⇨ *page 191*.

The cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Depending on your cell phone and the connection type, you can use the following functions:

Handsfree

Requirement: your cell phone must be connected to the MMI via a Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (Bluetooth HFP).

You can use the hands-free system. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

Sending and receiving messages

See ⇨ *page 136*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

- You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices using the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 190*.
- You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.
- You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.
- Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may also need to download the directory and confirm access to your text messages separately.
- When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

You can connect two cell phones to the MMI, for example your business cell phone as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both mobile phones.

The first connected cell phone is displayed as the primary phone in the MMI. The second cell phone is connected as the secondary phone.

The directory from the connected primary phone will always be displayed. If you would like to use the directory from the secondary phone, you must switch the primary and secondary phone ⇨ *page 131*.

Connecting a cell phone as the primary phone

▸ Connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The first connected cell phone is displayed as the **Primary phone** in the MMI.

See ⇨ *page 129, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

Connecting a cell phone as the secondary phone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI as the primary phone.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect secondary telephone**.

See ⇨ *page 129, Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth*.

Example: you have connected your business cell phone to the MMI as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. To be able to call contacts from your private cell phone directory, you must switch the primary and ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

secondary phone, since the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.

Switching the primary and secondary phone

Requirement: a primary phone and a secondary phone must be connected.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch primary and second. phone**.

Tips

– You can see if a cell phone is connected as the primary phone or secondary phone in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 190*.
– You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 192*.
– The device name of the connected primary phone is shown in the **Telephone** menu (such as myPhone).
– If the primary phone does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, for example because it is out of the vehicle range or the Bluetooth function is switched off, then a previously paired secondary phone is automatically connected as the primary phone.
– You can send and receive messages on your primary phone as well as on your secondary phone ⇨ *page 133, fig. 129*. You do not need to switch your primary phone and secondary phone for this.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

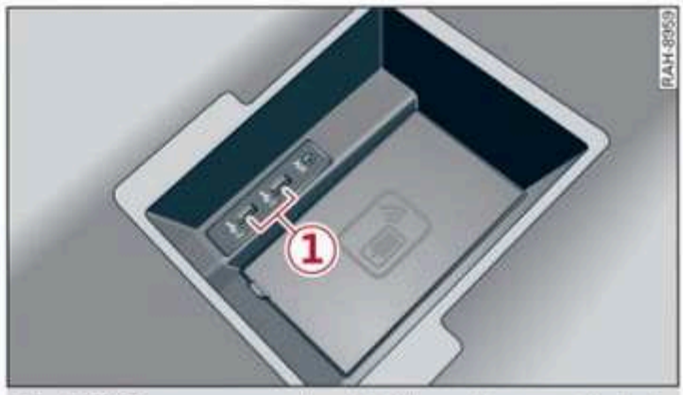


Fig. 128 Storage compartment in the center armrest: Audi phone box with connections

You can charge your mobile device battery using the Audi phone box. You can make calls through the exterior antenna* on the vehicle. Using the external antenna* helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

The options below are available:

– **Connecting to the external vehicle antenna***: lay the cell phone on the center of the cell phone symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up ⇨ *fig. 128*. Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device.
– **Charging a cell phone wirelessly**: place a Qi-capable [1] cell phone centered on the symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up ⇨ *fig. 128*. The cell phone will charge.
– **Charging a mobile device using the USB adapter**: connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter cable ①. You can charge your mobile device using specific USB adapters ⇨ *page 175, fig. 150*.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

[1] The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

OwnersManuals2.com

– Do not allow the visual or audio signals from a mobile device to distract you from traffic, because this increases the risk of an accident. Operate the mobile device only via the MMI. Close the cover on the compartment when driving.
– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 inches (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions.

Note

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the Audi phone box is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Note

Applicable to Canada

In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as an Audi phone box, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**. At the time of printing this user manual, the CPC-2-1-05 client procedures circular of ISED Canada was available at the following web page: http://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/sf08942.html.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Tips

– The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262*.
– Placing the mobile device in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box can interfere with the connection to the external antenna*.
– Metallic objects in the Audi phone box block the wireless charging of your mobile device and calls made using the exterior antenna*.
– The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.
– Your mobile device can only be charged in the Audi phone box when the ignition is switched on.
– To reduce the risk of malfunctions, make sure the mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
– The maximum charging output is 5 W. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– Strong transmission quality* cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile device is in the box.
– Only one mobile device at a time can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.
– Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.
– You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.
– If you place your remote control key together with your mobile device in the Audi phone box, it may cause your mobile device to stop charging if wireless charging is active.

Using the telephone

Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

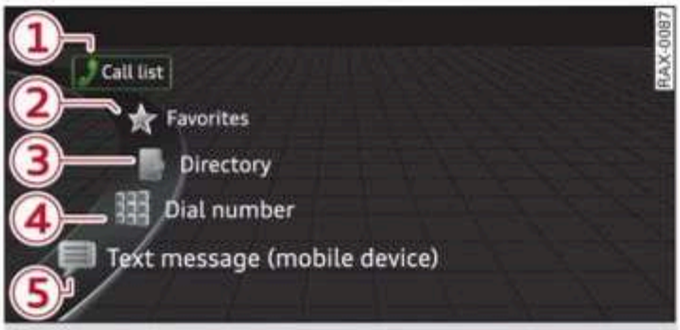


Fig. 129 Infotainment system: telephone functions in the selection menu

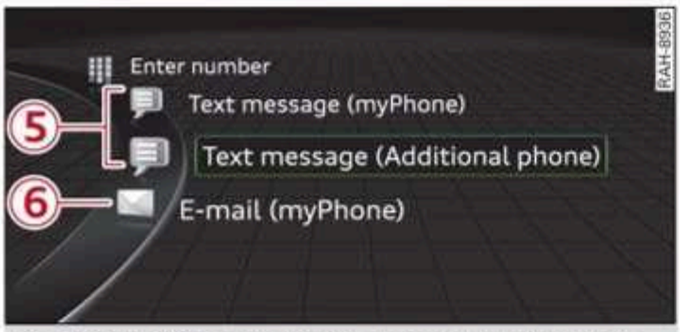


Fig. 130 Infotainment system: additional telephone functions in the selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 129*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following phone functions will be available:

① Call list 133
② Favorites 135
③ Directory 138
④ Dial phone number 133
⑤ Text message (myPhone)*/text message (secondary phone)* 136
⑥ E-mail (myPhone)*/e-mail (secondary phone)* 137

Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 131 Infotainment system: dialing a phone number from the call list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

Turn the control knob to display the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Accepted calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: call the selected contact.
– **Connect secondary telephone*/Switch primary and second. phone***: see ⇨ *page 130*.
– **Edit phone no. before call**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Select and confirm **OK** to edit. press the left control button to return without editing.
– **Send text message**: write a text message to the selected contact.
– **Delete call list**: select and confirm if you would like to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

– **Store as favorite**: store the selected contact as a favorite.
– **Show contact details**: see ⇨ *page 139*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 190*.
– **Bluetooth settings**: see ⇨ *page 192*.
– **Online settings***: see ⇨ *page 192*.
– **Wi-Fi settings***: see ⇨ *page 147*.
– **Telephone settings**: see ⇨ *page 140*.

Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 135*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 138*.

Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter a phone number using the number speller.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm **ABC** above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆, or push the control knob downward. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the control knob with the character selection to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob, or select: right control button > **Clear input field**.

Tone sequences (**DTMF**) can be entered directly into the speller during a phone call.

Accepting or ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Answer**.
▸ **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline**.
▸ **Muting the active call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
▸ **Ending a phone call/cancel dialing**: select and confirm **End call**.
▸ **Accepting another call**: see ⇨ *page 134*.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ Press the right control button.

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection:

– **Making an additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.
– **Answering an additional call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Answer** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person. To turn the microphone back on, select and confirm **Unmute**.

Hold call/Resume: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

Transfer call to mobile device*: select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

Switch to hands-free mode*: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Select and confirm **Switch to hands-free** ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

mode to transfer the call from your cell phone to the MMI.

Swap call: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed using the right control button > **Resume**.

Add to conference: a party on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using the right control button > **Hold conference**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*. You can add called contacts to the conference using the right control button > **Add to conference**. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

Multi-party calling: select the right control button > **Telephone settings** > **Call options**. When the function is switched on ☑, you can accept an additional call using **Answer** or decline a call using **Decline**. When the function is switched off, you can **Replace** or **Decline** a call.

Connection manager: see ⇨ *page 190*.

Telephone settings: see ⇨ *page 140*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *call waiting* function in your mobile device must be switched on when using the **Handsfree** profile.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Dial number** > Enter emergency call number (for example, 911) > **OK**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list:

Opening a menu

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

▸ Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**.
▸ Select a contact or phone number from the list.
▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
▸ Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion.
▸ Select and confirm **Save**.

Renaming stored favorites

▸ Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
▸ Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.

Moving stored favorites

▸ Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
▸ Select the right control button > **Move favorite**.
▸ Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Deleting a stored favorite

- Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
- Select: right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the mobile device being used and the mobile network contract, you may be able to receive and send text messages using the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) ⇨ *page 129*.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

Inbox

Displays all received text messages.

Sent

Displays all sent text messages.

Outbox

Displays all text messages to be sent.

Drafts

Displays all text messages that have not yet been sent and stored text messages.

Deleted

Displays all deleted text messages.

Write text message

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

Write new text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter a recipient. Select and confirm **Send**.

Reply*

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (MyPhone)/text message (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**.

Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open text message.

Text messaging settings*

To display when a new text message is received, enable the **Text message notifications**. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 190*.

1) Not available in all languages.

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 192*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 192*.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 147*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 140*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the mobile device automatically.

E-mail

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the type of mobile device being used, you may be able to receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) ⇨ *page 129*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)***.

Write new e-mail

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed.

Outbox

All e-mails that will be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All saved e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

To ensure that your sent e-mails are received, connect your cell phone to the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle so that the e-mail app on your cell phone continues to have Internet access. If you are still not receiving e-mails even though you have a successful connection, then contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to 10 additional templates of your own.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last edited e-mail

The last e-mail in progress can be resumed.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

Reply all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted.

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open e-mail.

E-mail settings*

To display when a new e-mail is received, activate the **E-mail notifications**. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 190*.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 192*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 192*.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 147*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 140*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

- **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

- **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**.

Tips

This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider.

Directory

Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- **Calling a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact are displayed. Select and confirm a phone number to start a call.
- **Free text search for a contact**: see ⇨ *page 139*.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇨ *page 140*, **Sort order**.

Tips

- Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
- The directory from the cell phone with the active connection will always be displayed.
- The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
- The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

1) Not available in all languages.

OwnersManuals2.com

Free text search for contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space in the input field. Enter additional letters if necessary.
- Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact are displayed.
- To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

Tips

- You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
- Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 119*.

Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You may be able to show contact details depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.
- Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
- Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

- **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
- **Adding a destination***: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

- **Read out contact**[1]: the MMI automatically creates a name tag that can be read aloud for each entry in the directory.
- **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 135*.
- **Send text message***: you can send a text message to the selected contact ⇨ *page 136*.
- **Delete contact**: the selected contact can be deleted.

Tips

- Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
- Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be edited or deleted.

Importing and exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 170* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 175*.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- Select: right control button > **Contact settings**.
- **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
- **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
- **Selecting all contacts at once to import or export**: select and confirm: **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

- For more information about the myAudi account, visit my.audi.com.
- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
- A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 140*.
- Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
- There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.

Additional settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Multi-party calling: can be switched on or off.

Ringtone and volume settings[1)]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone playback through the MMI speaker on and off. You can play the ringtones using the **Ringtone** function. Select and confirm an entry from the list. For the **Ringtone volume/ Message volume** settings, see ⇨ *page 193*. The **Microphone input level** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob.

Tips

- Several mobile devices can be paired with the MMI, but only two* mobile devices can be actively connected.
- To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 190*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

- **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 190*.
- **Bluetooth settings**: see ⇨ *page 192*.
- **Online settings***: see ⇨ *page 192*.
- **Wi-Fi settings***: see ⇨ *page 147*.

Contact settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Contact settings**.

Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17000 contacts with the directory. You can load up to 4000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1000 contacts from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**.

Import contacts/Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 139*.

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on, grayed-out contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden in the directory.

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

OwnersManuals2.com

Safety belt microphone

Applies to: vehicles with safety belt microphone



Fig. 132 Driver's seat: safety belt microphone

The safety belt microphone is positioned in the ideal location to provide the best hands-free call quality regardless of body size and seat position.

The safety belt microphone activates when you buckle the safety belt. Make sure that the microphone is on the side of the safety belt that is facing outward ⇨ *fig. 132*.

If you unbuckle the driver's safety belt, the system switches from the safety belt microphone to the roof microphone.

Tips

A dirty microphone opening can affect hands-free call quality. If this happens, clean the safety belt microphone using a brush.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Pairing the mobile device to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇨ *page 129*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 129*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile device.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your cell phone are limited or individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case with business cell phones.
Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box: Wireless charging of your mobile device is not working or has been interrupted.	Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box: Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Check if your mobile device is centered on the phone symbol in the Audi phone box and make sure there are *no* other objects in the Audi phone box. Do not place your remote control key in the Audi phone box with your cell phone.

OwnersManuals2.com

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 111, Traffic safety information.*
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 53*.

Note

– Applies to: use of separate SIM card in the SIM card reader or SIM card in the Wi-Fi device via personal hotspot: If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect Infotainment services will run through your SIM card. This could result in additional costs, depending on your cell phone service provider and especially when using in other countries. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective cell phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.

Tips

– The availability of services depends on the subscription.
– Audi merely provides access to third party services through the MMI and does not assume any responsibility for the content and availability of these services.
– Use of the most up-to-date mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.
– All services/apps can be modified, activated/deactivated, renamed, and enhanced without further notification.
– Depending on the country and model there may be an app other than the “myAudi app” available for your vehicle. For additional information, see my.audi.com.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– SIM card reader
– Personal Wi-Fi hotspot

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142.*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142.*

SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and a SIM card reader

All data connections will be made through the SIM card in the card reader, if a SIM card is inserted ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142.*

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. A data connection must be configured for Audi connect Infotainment services. Your personal SIM card must be a mini SIM card ⇨ ⓘ and have a data option.

Inserting a SIM card

The SIM card reader is located in the glove compartment.

- ▸ The angled corner of the SIM card must face toward the left front side when being inserted.
- ▸ Slide the SIM card into the SIM card reader slot until you feel the SIM card click into place.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Enter PIN** on the MMI. Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To connect to the Internet automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**; see also ⇨ *page 146.*

After connecting successfully, the signal strength ④ and connection type ③ will be displayed in the MMI status bar ⇨ *page 120, fig. 126.*

Removing a SIM card

- ▸ Press on the SIM card briefly.

Note

- Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142.*
- To reduce the risk of damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Contact your cell phone service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
- If a SIM card of a different size is inserted in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of damaging the SIM card reader. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- There is a risk of damaging the SIM card reader if you use a SIM card adapter, because vibrations can cause the SIM card to fall out of the adapter while driving. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- Additional Internet connection settings can be found under ⇨ *page 146.*
- Do not remove the SIM card from the SIM card reader when using the Audi connect Infotainment services.

Using personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and a personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the MMI can use the established Internet connection on your mobile device through a Wi-Fi connection.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. Your mobile device and your cell phone service provider must support the personal Wi-Fi hotspot function. The personal Wi-Fi hotspot must be activated on your mobile device. Access by other devices must be permitted on the personal hotspot. Your own SIM card in the mobile device must have a data option. No SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Connecting the MMI with the personal hotspot

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **On**.
- Then select and confirm **Network search**. The devices that are found are shown in the Infotainment system display.
- Select and confirm your personal Wi-Fi hotspot from the list.
- Enter the password that your mobile device provides, if necessary.
- Select and confirm **OK**.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142.*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142.*

Tips

- Your cell phone service provider can determine which functions are supported by your mobile device.
- Your cell phone data package determines if other devices will be able to use the personal Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Audi recommends protecting your mobile wireless network with a password to prevent unauthorized access.
- The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262.*

Using a Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 142*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Network key**. The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed. Switch on the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot if necessary.
- Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot using the authentication data that is shown.
- Follow any additional system prompts on your Wi-Fi device if necessary.

Your device is successfully connected with the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142.*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142.*

Tips

The system complies with United States FCC regulations and ISED regulations ⇨ *page 262.*

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: your vehicle must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 142.*

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com before using them for the first time.

- Register at my.audi.com.
- Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**.
- Log in to myAudi in the vehicle using your e-mail address and password. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

- For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI.
- Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated at my.audi.com.
- To make logging in easier in the vehicle, you will receive an 8-digit myAudi PIN as an alternative to your myAudi password after you have created a myAudi account.
- Depending on the country and model there may be an app other than the "myAudi app" available for your vehicle. For additional information, see my.audi.com.
- Depending on the country, you may be able to use an app or my.audi.com.

Accessing Audi connect Infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.

A list of all of the available Audi connect Infotainment services is shown on the Infotainment system display.

You can also filter the Audi connect Infotainment services by category:

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > for example, **Navigation** for the Audi connect Infotainment services in the Navigation menu.

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect Infotainment service* > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the Audi connect Infotainment service selected, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as preview

You can also see a preview of the selected Audi connect Infotainment services on the Audi connect Infotainment home page.

Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 144*.

Read out[1)]

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

Call

If a phone number was assigned to an entry, you can call the number, for example to reserve tickets.

Refresh

The contents for the selected Audi connect Infotainment service are refreshed.

Start route guidance

If a location was saved with an entry, you can use it as the navigation destination. Route guidance starts immediately.

Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 152*.

Closing Audi connect Infotainment services

Regardless of the function selected, you can close an Audi connect Infotainment service at any time and return to the home screen.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available: ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

OwnersManuals2.com

Weather information

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Online news

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired newsfeed* > *a headline*.

If you logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 144*, personalized newsfeeds can be displayed.

Access to Twitter

Requirement: you must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 144*. You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter.

You can only connect one Twitter account with your myAudi account. Not all settings can be adjusted in the MMI. Some can only be adjusted through the Twitter website.

▸ Select: **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**).

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the following options may be available in the overview of Audi connect Infotainment services:

About Audi connect

Here you will find legal information regarding Audi connect Infotainment usage.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 144*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 190*.

Subscriptions

The validity and expiration date of your licenses are displayed.

Refresh

The content of the selected Audi connect Infotainment service or the entire Audi connect Infotainment list is updated.

Data privacy

See ⇨ *page 255*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Settings

Cell phone network

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Connection manager**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Depending on the country, vehicle equipment, and connection type, the following functions may be available:

Data connection settings

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when the system should connect to the Internet. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

– **Connection setup**: you can select when a data connection should be established.
– **Audi connect (MMI)**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

– **Wi-Fi devices**: when the function is switched on, mobile devices can use the Internet connection through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Connection settings

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. The following values can be changed. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

– **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: your cell phone service provider assigns the user name for your online profile.
– **Password**: your cell phone service provider assigns the password for your online profile.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Tips

For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the hotspot.

Network key

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following information if needed.

– **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Password**: an initial password was set at the factory in the MMI. Audi recommends changing the initial password. Only use secure passwords that conform to the general guidelines for secure passwords. For more information, refer to reputable and current sources on password security.
– **Visible to others**: you can switch the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot on or off.

Network search

A list of available Wi-Fi networks in your area is displayed.

Connection to personal hotspot

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is activated. An MMI Internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (such as a smartphone) can be established. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 143*.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 142*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Tips

In vehicles without Audi connect Infotainment, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.

OwnersManuals2.com

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment services: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 147*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.
Wi-Fi hotspot: the data connection is interrupted.	Check if the function **Connection to personal hotspot** is activated ⇨ *page 147*. Turn the function off if you are not using a personal hotspot.
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot: the **Network search** is not possible (grayed out).	To start a network search for your personal Wi-Fi hotspot, the Wi-Fi hotspot must be turned on ⇨ *page 143*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 133 Instrument cluster: entering a destination

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button.

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed after opening navigation.

The following information can be displayed:

① Input field for free text search 150
② Home address 151
③ Last destinations 150
④ Stored favorites 151

Once you select an entry from the list (depending on the vehicle equipment), the corresponding destination will display as a map preview* ⑤.

If you have connected a mobile device to the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

The **Favorites** ④ menu item as well as the directory/contacts are only shown in the **Enter destination** menu if you have entered one or more characters using the input field.

Switching between the destination entry and the map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed, or

– Select: left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 111, Traffic safety information*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

– You can find information about importing a map update to your MMI using an **SD card** at my.audi.com.
– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

Entering a destination

Free text search for destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the MMI touch control pad, you can enter the data for a navigation destination all at once in any order (for example, Los Angeles, 20 Main St.). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.

Free text search

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the input field appears.
- ▸ Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
- ▸ If available, confirm the input suggestion* to complete the entry or a word suggestion* ⇨ *page 118, Letter/number speller*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the right to change the results list.
- ▸ Select and confirm a destination from the results list.

The route displays as an overview in the map. Route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search.

- ▸ Select: the right control button > **Country/state selection** in the input field ① ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select the country or state ● that should be searched for in the free text search in order to narrow the number of results and increase the search speed. The selected entry in the country/state selection is stored, or:
- ▸ Select and confirm **All countries/states**.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 119*.

Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be loaded directly as a destination.

Opening a menu

Requirement: a destination was already navigated to.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Your last destination is listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu under the home address and identified with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

- ▸ Select and confirm one of the last destinations from the list.

Deleting previous destinations

- ▸ Select one of the last destinations from the list.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Delete destination** > **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and no longer displayed in the **Enter destination** menu.

Enter address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to free text search, you can also enter an address in stages.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▸ Select and confirm a line (such as **Street**, **House number** or **Country/state**) and enter the desired information.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

Opening the map

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Adjusting the scale

- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left or to the right.

Activating the crosshairs

- ▸ Press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map.

Moving the crosshairs

- ▸ Move the crosshairs to the destination using the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *page 115*.

Selecting the destination

- ▸ Press the control knob when the crosshairs are shown.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Hiding the crosshairs

- ▸ Press the BACK button.

Additional information about the location of the crosshairs: when you select map content using the crosshairs, a display of available information appears (such as street name, address or points of interest) ⑥ ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can quickly and easily start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to frequently used destinations.

Opening a menu

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Setting a home address as the destination

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 155*.

Your **Home address** is shown directly in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

- ▸ Select and confirm **Home address**.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Requirement: a favorite must be stored as a destination ⇨ *page 155*.

- ▸ Enter one or more letters into the free text search input field. The favorites found are shown in the Infotainment system display ④ ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired entry.

Tips

- Additional settings for the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 155*.
- Additional settings for the favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 155*.

Transferring a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

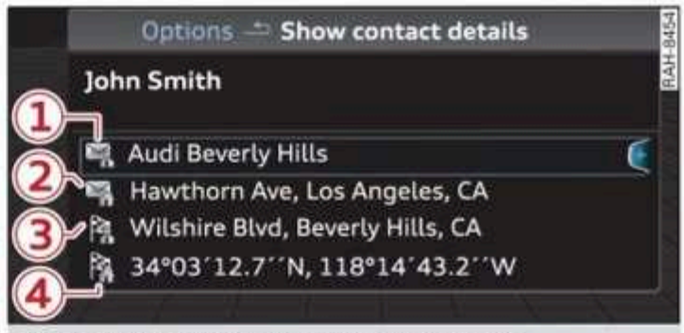


Fig. 134 Infotainment system: contact details

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 155*. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, the route guidance can be started directly.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 155*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your mobile device into the MMI can also be used as a destination.
– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to it.

Point of interest search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening the POI search

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

Change search area

▸ Select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.

The following search categories are available:

Nearby: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the immediate vicinity of the vehicle up to a radius of approximately 124 miles (200 km).

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route.

Near destination/Near stopover: points of interest near a destination or a stopover can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest can likewise be selected from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

In new city: select a country/state or search in a new city. Enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position.

Searching for the name of a point of interest in the selected search area

▸ Select and confirm: **Find entry** > **Enter point of interest**.
▸ Enter the name of the point of interest.

Searching for a point of interest in a specific category

▸ Select and confirm **Select category**.
▸ Select and confirm a category, such as Restaurants.

Tips

– Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. Select the corresponding entry from the list. Select: right control button > Show destination details. Detailed information for the selected entry in the list is then displayed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Online point of interest search (online search)

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 142*.

Opening the online search

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is displayed in the input field.

Change search area

- Select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.

Searching for an online destination in the selected search area

- If necessary, enter a new city, state, or country.
- Enter the search term, such as hotel.
- Press the control knob.
- Select and confirm an online destination from the list.

Searching for an online destination in a specific category

- Select and confirm **Select category**.
- Select and confirm a category, such as Restaurants.

Find which search areas are available in ⇨ *page 152*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system* ⇨ *table on page 126*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Accessing destinations from myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

Import individual destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 142*. You must have a registered myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have a vehicle assigned to your myAudi account and you must have stored one or more destinations.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
- If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN ⇨ *page 144*. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.
- Select and confirm a contact.
- Select and confirm a private or business destination.
- Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– You only need to enter the myAudi user data one time.
– You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account.
– For additional information, visit my.audi.com.

Entering a destination using geo coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Select: left control button > **Geographical coordinates**.
- Select **Latitude/Longitude**.
- Turn the control knob to change the latitude/longitude.
- Press the control knob to confirm your input.
- Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

OwnersManuals2.com

Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 135 Infotainment system: active route guidance with stopover

You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.

Requirement: route guidance must already be active.

Opening a menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

- Enter a destination in the input line ① ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
- Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

- Push the control knob upward. Free text search and active route guidance are displayed, or:
- Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
- Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ①. The stopover is deleted.

Cancel route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
- Select and confirm **Delete destination** ⇨ *page 154, fig. 135*. The destination is deleted, or:
- Select: right control button > **Cancel route guidance**

Additional options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following options may be available when entering a destination:

Cancel route guidance: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Route guidance is canceled. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 154*.

Map settings ⇨ *page 160*.

Navigation settings ⇨ *page 156*.

Voice guidance ⇨ *page 157*.

Route criteria ⇨ *page 156*.

Show location on map: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

Parking at this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

POIs along the route: all points of interest in the area around the vehicle will be displayed when route guidance is active.

Delete: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

Audi connect at this location[1]: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as travel information. ▶

[1] This function is not offered in Mexico.

OwnersManuals2.com

Online traffic data*: receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 162* can be switched on or off.

Country/state selection ⇨ *page 150*.

Store as favorite ⇨ *page 155*.

Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening a menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Storing a home address

- Select and confirm **Home address** (2) ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*. After opening the home address for the first time, you will be asked to create a home address.
- Select and confirm **Create now**.
- Enter a destination, or
- Select and confirm a destination from the list.

Editing the home address

- Select the **Home address** (2) ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
- Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening a menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Saving a destination as a favorite

- Search for the desired destination in the input field, or:
- Select a destination from the list.
- Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.

Renaming a favorite

- Select: left control button > **Favorites** > *select a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**.

Move favorite

- Select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**.
- Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.

Deleting a favorite

- Select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

Opening a menu

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 129*.

- Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
- Enter the first letters of the desired contact in the free text search input field ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133* and then select a contact from the list.
- Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.

OwnersManuals2.com

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 136 Infotainment system: display of alternative routes

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Show alternative routes**.

Three routes are displayed in the overview map after you enter a destination.

- ▸ Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
– Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time
– Traffic congestion along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the overview map . The special properties of the route will also be displayed ④.

Additional settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Show alternative routes

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the overview map when the function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 156*.

Low fuel warning

A message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking when this function is switched on ☑. After confirming this message, a list of gas stations in the area is displayed. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Notification when nearby*

The notification when nearby is switched off at the factory.

The MMI notifies you when you are approaching selected points of interest when this function is switched on ☑. You can also have a **Notification tone**.

Presentation mode

The **Presentation mode** helps you to effectively plan a trip and follow the planned route without moving the vehicle. You can use **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start **Presentation mode** to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

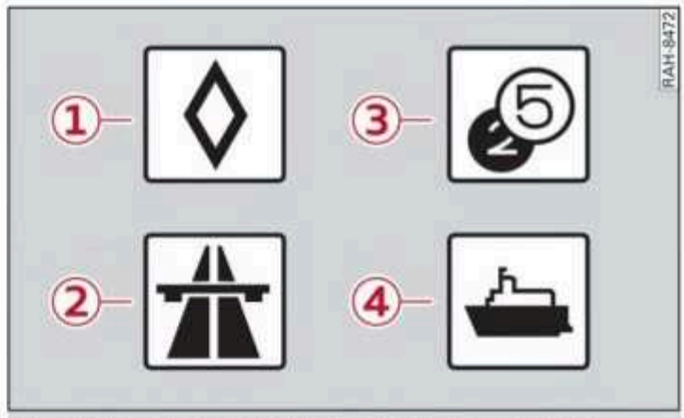


Fig. 137 Infotainment system: possible route criteria ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① HOV/carpool lanes[1)]

When the **Avoid** function is used, HOV lanes or carpool lanes are excluded from the route calculation. With **Allow**, the MMI will guide you using HOV and carpool lanes and it will indicate them.

② Highways/③ Toll roads/④ Ferries

Select the **Avoid** option if the navigation system should not include highways, toll roads, or ferries when calculating a route, if possible.

Navigation announcements

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: voice guidance can be **Complete** or **Shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Voice guidance during phone call: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

Entertainment fader ⇨ *page 193*.

Voice guidance volume: ⇨ *page 193*.

1) High occupancy vehicle

OwnersManuals2.com

Map

Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 138 Instrument cluster: map with crosshairs turned on



Fig. 139 Instrument cluster: map with crosshairs turned on

Opening the map

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Zooming in/out on the map

▸ Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. You can also zoom in and out on the map using the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *page 115*, or

▸ turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 13*.

Turning the crosshairs on

▸ Press the control knob in the map view.

Turning the crosshairs off

▸ Press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched on ⇨ *fig. 138*:

① Orientation: you can find additional information in ⇨ *page 160*.

② Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale.

③ Zoom: when the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on, an "A" for "Automatic" is displayed in the magnifying glass.

④ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

pad and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.

⑤ Map content (points of interest, favorites): if there are multiple POIs in the immediate vicinity, they will be shown stacked on the map.

⑥ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.

⑦ Display of an upcoming maneuver: if there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance and calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover will be displayed in this location.

⑧ Better route: More information can be found under ⇨ *page 163*.

When the crosshairs are switched off ⇨ *fig. 139*:

⑨ If a turn arrow is displayed, a bar graph turns on. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

⑩ Speed limit display: display of the maximum permitted speed on expressways and highways.

⑪ Street being driven on: "offroad" will be displayed here when the vehicle is stationary.

⑫ Vehicle location

⑬ Display of active traffic information

⑭ Altitude

⑮ Route information: various information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 139*.
- ▸ Press the left control button.

The following map functions can be selected:

Destination input

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 149, fig. 133*.

Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. You can also find additional information under ⇨ *page 162*.

Route list

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Information about the route, street names, and the length of the route sections will be displayed. When traveling on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

Points of interest along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route For additional information, see ⇨ *page 152*.

Additional options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 158, fig. 139*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

Cancel route guidance ⇨ *page 154*.

Map settings ⇨ *page 160*.

Route criteria ⇨ *page 156*.

Voice guidance ⇨ *page 157*.

Navigation settings ⇨ *page 156*.

Online traffic data*: ⇨ *page 162*.

Show alternative routes ⇨ *page 156*.

Parking along the route: parking options along the route will be displayed. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Save current position: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 155* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 155*.

Audi connect at this location*: allows you to search for travel information at the entered location (events, weather at the destination, etc.).

Country information: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. If this function is activated, the information will be automatically shown to you in the route information (15) ⇨ *page 158, fig. 139* when the speed limit is exceeded ⇨ *page 160*.

Avoid route*: when route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 12 mi (20 km)), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Map colors

Day/Night: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Automatic: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, changing from **Day** to **Night** when driving through a tunnel).

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Satellite map*[1] ⇨ *page 161, fig. 140*.

Traffic ⇨ *page 162*.

Map orientation

Destination map: the map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D heading-up map/2D north-up map: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

3D heading-up map: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is aligned to the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 mi (100 km) and larger, the map orientation is to the north.

Overview map: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the current road being driven on, upcoming maneuvers, traffic information or points of interest along the route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale will also be automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is maintained.

Map content

Map content, such as traffic information, favorites or restaurants, can be displayed or hidden ☑.

[1] Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

OwnersManuals2.com

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

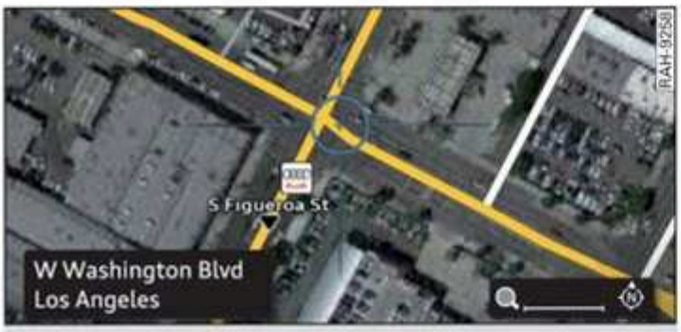


Fig. 140 Infotainment system: satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 142*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Satellite map**[1].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,485 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

- The stored satellite map data [1] can be deleted under **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 190*.
- The satellite map[1] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
- When the satellite map display[1] is switched on with the 3D position map, the map display will automatically switch to the 2D heading up map type when driving through tunnels.

[1] Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

OwnersManuals2.com

Accessing traffic information

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment



Fig. 141 Instrument cluster: online traffic information display* without better route

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 142*.

Accessing online traffic information

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Online traffic data** > *On* ☑.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**. The traffic information overview is shown.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following information may be shown in the traffic information overview ⇨ *fig. 141*:

① A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 163*.

② The status line in the Infotainment display also always indicates the reception of traffic information.

③ The current selected traffic message is also shown as a map preview in the Infotainment system display.

④ Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow.

Traffic information display on the map

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Yellow: stop-and-go traffic.

Red: congestion.

During active route guidance, traffic incidents on the route will be displayed with colored warning symbols on the map. Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Colored warning symbols: an impending traffic incident directly ahead on your route.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

Red warning symbols: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 160*.

Traffic information is switched on at the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Switching the traffic map display on

For an optimum traffic information display: NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also display the online traffic information in the satellite map*[1] ⇨ *page 161* or the standard map ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

Having the **Online traffic data** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. If you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

By receiving traffic information online, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

Selecting a better route

Requirement: route guidance must be active and online traffic information must be available ⇨ *page 162*

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** appears for several seconds along with the time that may be saved. A better route is indicated in the map view by the symbol ⇨ *page 158, fig. 138*.

Accept better route

- Press the right control button in the map view, or:
- Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route with the calculated arrival time is displayed.
- Select and confirm the better route, or:
- Select and confirm **Details** to display details about the better route.
- You can zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch control pad.

Requirement: there must be more than one optimized route calculated.

- Press the control knob to switch to the next route in the detailed view.
- **Closing the detailed view**: press the BACK button.

After you have selected a better route, the route will be recalculated.

[1] Audi provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

OwnersManuals2.com

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Free text search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be included in the navigation database, or the term may have been entered incorrectly. Check if the desired country/state was selected for the free text search using the **Country/state selection** ⇨ *page 150* or select the option **All countries/states**.

OwnersManuals2.com

Radio

Opening the radio



Fig. 142 Infotainment system: FM station list (HD Radio technology FM)



Fig. 143 Infotainment system: SiriusXM channel list

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the radio may support the FM, AM, and SiriusXM (satellite radio) frequency bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

Selecting a station: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD Ⓐ. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

Setting the frequency band: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

Updating the station list: station lists are updated automatically.

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① **Presets**

The station is stored as a preset. The symbol shows the stored location in the presets list (for example, 21).

② **Radio text (shortened display)**

If available, program information about the set station is displayed in all of the station lists.

③ **Frequency**

④ **Station name**

⑤ **Channel number**

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

NoSignal: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal Ⓑ.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
- Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
- Satellite radio is not available in all regions.

Radio functions

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search



Fig. 144 Infotainment system: input field and results list for free text search

OwnersManuals2.com

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name or program type, such as **News**.

- **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
- **Using the free text search**: see ⇨ *page 119*.

You can also search for frequencies.

Stations from the presets list ③ are displayed in the results list ①. The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

Additional options

- Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 193*.
– **Store as preset**: see ⇨ *page 167*.
– **Radio settings**: see ⇨ *page 168*.

Delete all entries

In the **Last stations** view, all entries are deleted.

Manual tuning

The frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.

Seek

The previous or next receivable station is selected.

Scan

All stations are played for several seconds each.

Radio text

Opening radio text

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (such as **FM**) > a station.
- Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, track) is displayed.

Scrolling through radio text entries

- Turn the control knob to the left or to the right.

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*:

Requirement: a radio text entry must be displayed and the station must be broadcasting a phone number, a navigation destination or a text message number as Radio Text Plus information.

If a location, a phone number or a text message number is included with a radio text entry, the radio text will be shown with a colored border.

- Select a radio text entry with Radio Text Plus information and press the control knob.
- Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***.
- press the BACK button to cancel.

Tips

The availability of radio text and RadioText Plus depends on the radio station.

View: additional station information



Fig. 145 Infotainment system: "Now Playing" screen

Requirement: the **Show "Now Playing" screen** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 168*.

Symbols in the "Now Playing" screen:

① **Radio text availability**

Radio text is available for the selected station ⇨ *page 166*.

② **FM HD Radio technology**

The station is received through FM HD Radio technology.

③ **Screen view** ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Display **Cover art** or **Station logo** ⇨ *page 168*, **Preferred picture view**.

Displaying the station list

turn the control knob, or press the BACK button.

Radio menu



Fig. 146 Infotainment system: Radio menu

Opening a menu

- Select: RADIO button > left control button.

Selecting the frequency band

- Select and confirm the desired frequency band in the radio menu, or
- Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set. Displays the station list.

① **Switch to media**

The Media menu is displayed ⇨ *page 177*.

② **Presets**

The presets list is displayed ⇨ *page 167*.

③ **Last stations**

The last stations listened to from all frequency bands are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station for immediate playback.

④ Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

SiriusXM

The SiriusXM channel list is displayed.

⑤ **FM**

The FM station list is displayed.

Additional frequency bands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can select additional frequency bands in the selection menu ⇨ *fig. 146*.

Presets

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

Opening a menu

- Select: the RADIO button > left control button > **Presets**.

Storing a preset

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

- Select and confirm a free preset space. Follow the system instructions.
- Select and confirm a station from the list if necessary.

Storing a preset

Requirement: a station list must be displayed.

- Select: *a station from the list* > right control button > **Store as preset**.
- Press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

Listening to a preset

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

- Select and confirm a preset from the list.

Move preset

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

- Select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Move preset**, or
- Press and hold the control knob for several seconds.
- Select and confirm the location of the selected preset.

Deleting a preset

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

- Select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Delete preset** > **Delete this preset** or **Delete all presets**.

OwnersManuals2.com

Additional settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

Station names (FM)

Variable: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the Infotainment system display.

Fixed: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment system display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

FM HD Radio/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

Channel sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the channel sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

- **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
- **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
- **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
- **First category, then channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Show "Now Playing" screen

When the function is switched on ☑ and the stations or presets list is open, the display will switch to the **Show "Now Playing" screen** view after approximately five seconds ⇨ *page 166*. Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist and station logo) may be displayed in this view.

Preferred picture view

You can set your preferred screen view for the **Show "Now Playing" screen** ⇨ *page 166*.

- **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
- **Cover art**: the album cover or genre cover is displayed, depending on availability.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 168*, **Preferred picture view**.

When the function is switched on ☑, the album cover or genre cover for the song that is playing is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call to SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 167*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Media

Introduction

There are various media sources and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the Jukebox* or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media available in the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video* files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions or may not play at all.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video* files are subject to copyright protection.

The media sources do not play files that are protected by DRM and are identified with the symbol .

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox*, CDs/DVDs* or mobile devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video* files. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 190*.

If functionality is restricted, reset the Jukebox* to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 190*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 183*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

CD/DVD operation

Applies to: vehicles with a CD/DVD drive

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard, and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession DVDs are not supported.

Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do not use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs with 3 inch (8 cm) diameter
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely high or low. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers that are installed conform to safety class 1. Lasers in this class are very weak and well-shielded, so there is no danger if used correctly.

Media drives

SD card reader

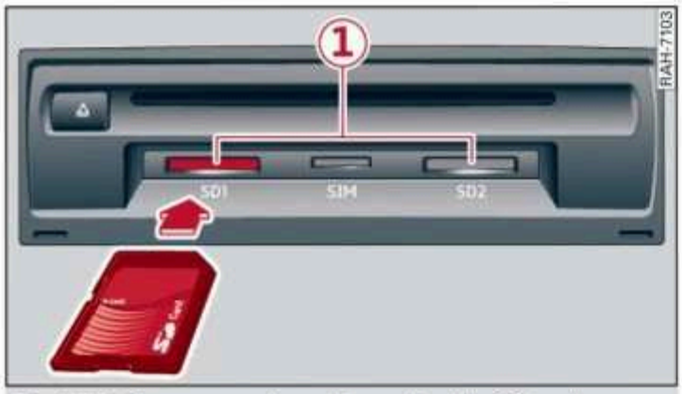


Fig. 147 Glove compartment: inserting the SD card

Inserting the SD card

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary.

- The angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front side when being inserted. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot ① until the SD card clicks into place.

Automatic playback

Playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files* ⇨ *page 183*.

Removing the SD card

- Press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI ③ ⇨ *page 177, fig. 152*.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

Always keep the SD card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles, and other damage.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

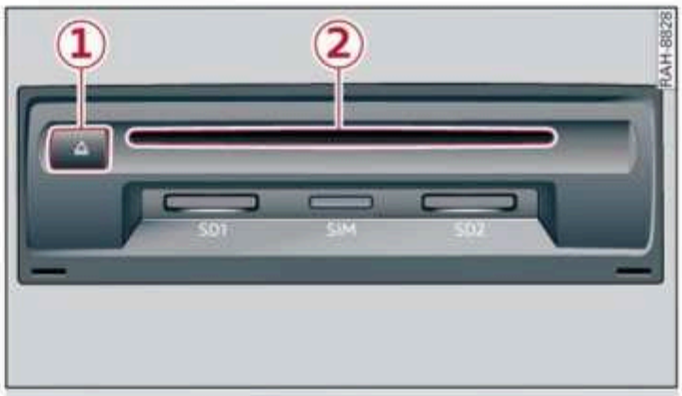


Fig. 148 Glove compartment: DVD drive

Loading a CD/DVD

- The CD/DVD will be automatically pulled in. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up.

Automatic playback

Playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 183*.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

- Press the button ①.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ② ⇨ *page 177, fig. 152*.

Note

- Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
- Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

CDs/DVDs that contain audio files with a high data rate may not play.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

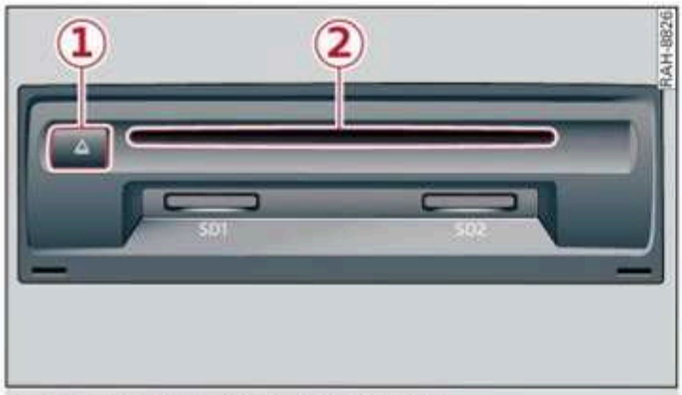


Fig. 149 Glove compartment: CD drive

Loading a CD

▸ The CD will be automatically pulled in. Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up.

Automatic playback

Playback will start automatically if the inserted CD contains supported audio files ⇨ *page 184*.

Ejecting a CD

▸ Press the button ①.

The CD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within ten seconds of ejecting it.

The CD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 177*.

Note

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD and damage the drive.

Tips

CD playback cannot be guaranteed with audio files that have a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with Jukebox

After you have filled the Jukebox with music and/or videos*, for example from your SD card, you can play these files directly from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.

Opening the Jukebox

▸ Press the MEDIA button.
▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
▸ Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Adding files to the Jukebox

▸ Press the MEDIA button.
▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
▸ Select and confirm one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Selecting an entry

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

▸ Select an entry from the media center.
▸ Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Selecting a track

Requirement: the playlist must be open ⇨ *page 180*.

▸ Select the track that is currently playing.
▸ Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file* must be playing.
▸ Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.
▸ **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
▸ **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**, or remove the source that is currently being imported. Files already copied remain. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Requirement: the copying process must be active in the background.

▸ **Showing the copying process**: select: right control button > **Copying in progress**.

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 178*. The copied video files* are stored in the media center under the **Videos*** category.

Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 171, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI ① ⇨ *page 177, fig. 152*.

Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

▸ Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files*.

▸ Select an entry from the Jukebox media center.

▸ Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Note

Do not import audio/video files* when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.

– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.

– It is not possible to play audio/video* files in the CD/DVD* drive while importing them.

– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.

– Files or tracks without additional stored information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.

– Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 190*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 192* and mobile device must be switched on. The **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 192* must be switched on in the MMI.

Connecting a Bluetooth device

▸ Press the MEDIA button.

▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.

▸ Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 177, fig. 153*.

▸ If necessary, select and confirm: **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.

▸ Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.

▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.

▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device, or if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it on the Bluetooth ▶

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

OwnersManuals2.com

device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

Tips

- Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
- Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
- Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported.
- Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
- The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
- A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi-capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected through the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library.

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The myAudi app or a UPnP server app is installed on your media player, or your media player has an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

Connecting a media player

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
- Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** ⑦ ⇨ *page 177, fig. 153*.
- If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi turned off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI.
- If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi settings**.
- Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Starting the Wi-Fi audio player

- Start the myAudi app or an UPnP server app, or allow media sharing on your device.

Operating a media player

The media player is operated through the MMI.

- Press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears.
- Select and confirm **Folders**.

Playing music from a media player

- Select and confirm **Media center**.

Internet radio: see ⇨ *page 174*.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 111, Traffic safety information*.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 53*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ① *in General information on page 142*. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

- The Wi-Fi connection is reconfigured when inserting or removing the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*. There may be a temporary interruption in audio playback, depending on the media player.
- Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 142*.
- To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger.
- The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
- A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
- Songs downloaded for offline use using music streaming services are stored on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and may be DRM protected. The Wi-Fi audio player will not play DRM protected files.
- Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can playback and operate various online media services and Internet radio using the MMI.

▸ Press the MEDIA button.
▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177, fig. 153* is displayed.

Applies to: using online media and Internet radio

Requirement

- The myAudi app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
- You must be logged into your myAudi account in the myAudi app and you must have selected your vehicle.
- The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
- If necessary, check in the connection manager ⇨ *page 190* if the mobile device you connected is selected under the **MMI connect app** ☑.
- The MMI must be connected to the network.
- The symbol for the **Online media** source ⑧ ⇨ *page 177, fig. 153* is shown in the MMI.

Applies to: using online media

Additional requirement

- A supported online media service must be available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- You must have an account with a supported online media service.
- Depending on the online media service, you may need to install and open an app on your mobile device.

Starting Online media

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
- Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

- Press the MEDIA button.
- Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
- Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the last station that was playing is shown.
- **Selecting the station**: if necessary, select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio:: additional options

- Press the right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the information shown (such as the station/track that is currently playing):

- **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 193*.
- **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 147*.
- **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 190*.
- Additional options may be available, depending on the active online media service or Internet radio. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 111, Traffic safety information*.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 53*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Tips

- Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
- **Online media** and **Internet radio** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
- Audi simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the content of the online media services.
- Depending on the mobile device being used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the myAudi app. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the myAudi app in the foreground.
- Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter

Applies to: vehicles with USB adapter

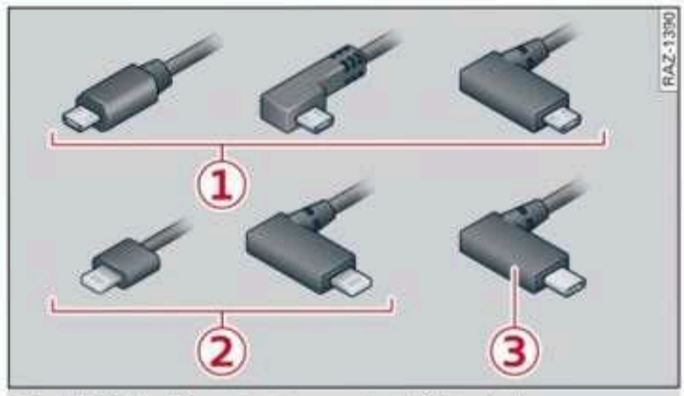


Fig. 150 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can connect your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface or a USB charging port using a special USB adapter.

You can purchase the USB adapter cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for Apple devices with a Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Tips

- The USB adapter on the Audi music interface will support iPod touch or iPhone devices from the 5th generation or newer with the lightning connector.
- Apple devices with a dock connector can only be charged using a USB adapter designed for devices with a dock connector. Data cannot be transmitted.

OwnersManuals2.com

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface



Fig. 151 Storage compartment in the center console: connecting mobile devices

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the battery.

USB input

- **Connecting a mobile device using a USB adapter**: connect the applicable USB adapter (2) to the port on the Audi music interface (3) and then connect the adapter to the mobile device (1) (such as an iPod).
- **Charging a mobile device using a USB adapter**: when you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface (3) using the applicable USB adapter (2), the battery will automatically charge.
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: remove the USB adapter (2) from the Audi music interface (3).

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 177*.

Connecting multiple mobile devices: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

AUX Input

- **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: connect the cable (5) to the AUX input (6) on the Audi music interface and then to the mobile device (4) (such as an MP3 player or smartphone).
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: remove the cable (5) from the Audi music interface.
- **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source (5) ⇨ *page 177, fig. 152*. The media are started and operated through the mobile device (4).

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

- Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 64*.
- When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
- Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter ⇨ *page 175*. Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
- You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
- Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

approximately 70% of the maximum volume.
- Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Some versions of the iPod such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with dock connector. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
- Video playback* through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
- iPod or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your mobile device in these situations.
- Audi recommends updating the iPod or iPhone software to the latest version. Refer to your mobile device owner's manual for more information.
- The USB adapter on the Audi music interface will support iPod touch or iPhone devices from the 5th generation or newer with the lightning connector.
- A selection of supported devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3.

Playing media

Accessing media

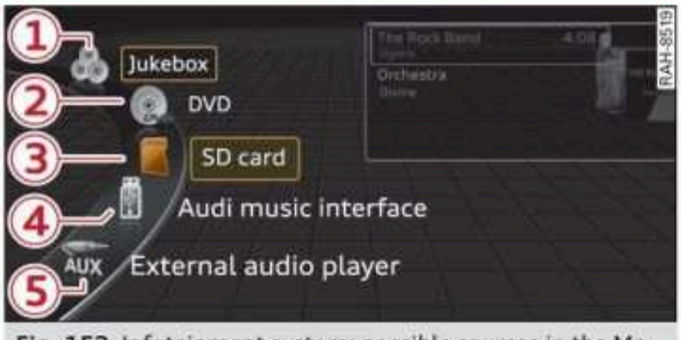


Fig. 152 Infotainment system: possible sources in the Media menu



Fig. 153 Infotainment system: possible sources in the Media menu

You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 170*.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source, or
- ▸ press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:

Switch to radio: the Radio menu opens ⇨ *page 165*.

① **Jukebox** 171
② **CD/DVD player** 170, 171
③ **SD card reader** 170
④ **Audi music interface** 176
such as iPod, USB stick
⑤ **External audio player** 176
such as an MP3 player connected to the AUX input
⑥ **Bluetooth audio player** 172
⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player** 173
⑧ **Online media** and **Internet radio** . . 174

- **Playing audio/video files***: select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).
- **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button, or select and confirm **Folder up**. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– **Selecting the previous or next track/chapter** [1]: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **Fast-forwarding and rewinding audio/video* files**: press and hold the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ for a longer time.
– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– For safety reasons, the video image* is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video* plays while driving.

Media center



Fig. 154 Infotainment system: USB flash drive categories

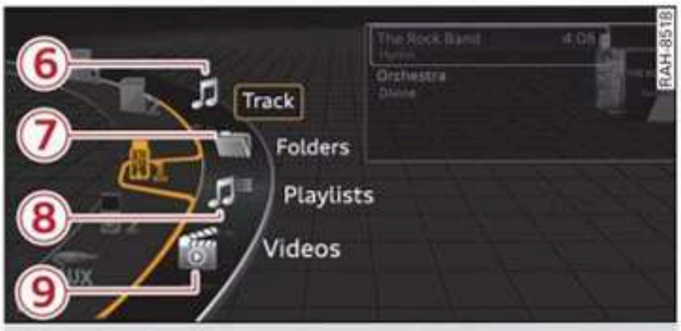


Fig. 155 Infotainment system: USB flash drive categories

Various categories for selecting audio/video* files are available in the media center.

▸ Press the MEDIA button.

▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.
▸ Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The active source symbol ① may change depending on the connected device, the online media service*, or Internet radio*. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone). As an example, a USB stick is shown connected to the Audi music interface*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video files* from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list ⇨ *page 180*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track. ▶

[1] Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

OwnersManuals2.com

⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Smart playlists

- **Last played tracks**: the last tracks played in the selected source are displayed.
- **Most played tracks**: the most played tracks in the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Unrated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Tips

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks* cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 175*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available.
- For safety reasons, the video image* is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video* plays while driving.
- When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud" services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search



Fig. 156 Infotainment system: input field and results list for free text search

You can search in the active source, for example for tracks and video files*.

You can open the **free text search** depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 180* or media center ⇨ *page 178* must be displayed.

Opening free text search

- ▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or:
- ▸ Push the control knob upward.

Using the free text search: see ⇨ *page 119, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤. You can search for artists ②, albums ③ or tracks ④ as well as genres and videos*.

Tips

- Only files in the active source will be searched.
- If you open free text search in the **Folders** category ⑦ ⇨ *page 178, fig. 155* or the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** categories, it will only search through the files in that folder.

OwnersManuals2.com

Playlist



Fig. 157 Infotainment system: playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist.

Options menu

See ⇨ *page 180, Additional settings*.

Favorites

Up to 50 entries for every media source can be stored in any order in the favorites list.

Storing a favorite

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.

- ▸ Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
- ▸ Press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Displaying the favorites list

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button.
- ▸ Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 177* is displayed.
- ▸ Select the source that contains the categories ⇨ *page 178* (for example, SD card).
- ▸ Select and confirm the **Favorites** category.

Listening to a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select and confirm an entry from the favorites list.

Moving a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select the desired entry from the favorites list.
- ▸ Select the right control button > **Move favorite**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired favorites location.

Deleting a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

- ▸ Select the desired entry from the favorites list.
- ▸ Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Options menu

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected source, context-dependent functions and settings will be available.

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 193*.

Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable or to a USB adapter ⇨ *page 175*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 192*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 147*.

OwnersManuals2.com

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 190*.

Show "Now Playing" screen

With the function switched on ☑ and a playlist open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album and album cover*) as well as the playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed.

Rewind/Fast forward

Turn the control knob to the left or right, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad from the left to the right.

Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu is closed. The track currently playing appears in the playlist ⇨ *page 180, fig. 157*.

Play similar music

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed for features such as artist, genres, mood, and beat, and a smart playlist with similar tracks will be shown.

Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track currently playing. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

Copy to Jukebox

See ⇨ *page 171, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

Set as ringtone[2)]

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI. The track currently playing must be in the **Jukebox** ⇨ *page 171*.

The selected track will be used as the ringtone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track currently playing when this function is switched on ☑.

Favorites

See ⇨ *page 180*.

Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

Parental control

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

- **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at level 5, all DVDs from levels 1 - 5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select and confirm **No restriction** to remove all restrictions.
- **Change password**: edit the current password. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.

2) This function is not available for all cell phones.

OwnersManuals2.com

Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist, or press the BACK button.

Replay video

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

Show DVD menu

Selecting a menu item: select and confirm a menu item, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad* and press the control knob.

Audio track[1)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The availability of the language and audio format depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can manually select subtitles for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Aspect

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format depending on the active file or source (for example video file, DVD).

Aspect ratio	Description
Automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimal ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted.
Cinemascope	Use this setting for films in cinema format 21:9. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Automatic** is selected.
4:3	The image is set to the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display.
16:9	The image is set to the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.

Tips

- Not all video DVDs have parental control.
- The protection levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.
- Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

OwnersManuals2.com

Supported media and file formats

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following properties for audio/video files may be supported by the DVD drive, Jukebox, SD card reader, and the connection for USB storage devices:

	Audio files				Video files		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices (such as an iPod ⇨ *page 175*, MTP player, USB storage device in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives						
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions**: 2 per USB connection **CD/DVD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF						
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote is displayed, depending on availability.						
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	FLAC	MPEG 1/2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive**: max. 1,000 files per medium **Jukebox**: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; max. 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage device and memory cards**: max. 10,000 files per Medium; max. 1,000 files per playlist/directory						

Tips

- The media sources do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".

– Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

The following audio file properties are supported by the CD drive:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file system**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium may be displayed, depending on availability.			
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	Maximum 1,000 files per medium			

Tips

– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.

– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.

Troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 175, Multimedia connections/*⇨ *page 172, Bluetooth audio player*.
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 192* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
Audi music interface: audio playback through the connected mobile device is not possible.	Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device.
AUX input: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input.	Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 180,* **Input level**.
AUX input: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable.	When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 193*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 165, Opening the radio*).
Bluetooth audio player/Wi-Fi audio player: audio playback interference.	Only one interface should be actively used at a time to prevent issues during playback.
Wi-Fi audio player: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader* on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Jukebox: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Jukebox: imported tracks cannot be played or found.	If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 183* to the Jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the media source and cannot be changed.	Close the myAudi app on the connected devices (such as smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player ⇨ *page 173*.
Online media: connection failed between the MMI and the myAudi app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the myAudi app status screen. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Problem	Solution
Bluetooth audio player: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).
Wi-Fi hotspot: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information, refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.

OwnersManuals2.com

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted to the Infotainment system display while driving and can be operated through the MMI control panel.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. An iPhone from the 6th generation or newer with lightning connection must have the latest operating system installed or a smartphone with Android Auto app must have Android 5.0 Lollipop or newer installed.

- Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 176* using the applicable USB adapter ⇨ *page 175, fig. 150*.
- Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- Follow the system instructions.
- Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.

If you chose not to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto when connecting your smartphone for the first time, you can start the Audi smartphone interface later on using the **Connection manager**.

- Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Change to connection manager**.
- Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 176* using the applicable USB adapter ⇨ *page 175, fig. 150*.
- Select and confirm **Audi smartphone interface** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 190*. You can select your smartphone in the list of devices that are already paired ⇨ *page 191*.
- Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 142*.

Tips

- The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  - The software version of the app used
  - The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  - Your cell phone service provider
  - The customized settings on your smartphone
- One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
- If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 128*.
- The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- The time displayed in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- Some MMI functions are not available when there is an active Audi smartphone interface connection.
- You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Audi smartphone interface connection is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Opening a menu

- **Apple CarPlay**: you can go back to the Apple CarPlay main menu regardless of the selected ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

menu item by pressing and holding the BACK button.

- ▸ **Android Auto**: to go back to the Android Auto menu bar, push the control knob down.

Opening a menu item

- ▸ Select and confirm a menu item using the MMI control panel.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 175*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 175*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

OwnersManuals2.com

System settings

Setting the date and time

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS.

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**, or:
- Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically set.

Time

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Time** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Date

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **31.03.2022**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **03/31/2022**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will show, for example, **2022-03-31**.

MMI settings

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the display language as well as the language for the voice guidance* and voice recognition system*.

The number of languages available depends on the country.

Measurement units

The following measurement units can be set depending on availability: **Speed**, **Distance**, **Temperature**, **Fuel consumption**, **Volume**, **Pressure**.

Mobile device reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Requirement: your cell phone must be Qi-capable [1] or connected to the Audi music interface ① with a USB adapter cable ⇨ *page 131, fig. 128*.

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle. You can select between **Spoken cue**, **Signal tone** and **Off**.

Mobile device reminder signal volume: you can adjust the reminder signal volume by turning the control knob.

Switch off pop-up: when the function is switched on ☑, the messages in the Infotainment system display regarding the charging status of your cell phone in the Audi phone box are hidden. The reminder not to forget your cell phone when leaving the vehicle is also switched off. ▶

[1] The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tool tips

When this function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time.

Speech dialog system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Command display: when this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will show you the possible commands for voice input in the respective menu.

Short dialog: when this function is switched on ☑, a shorter form of the prompts is used.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual speech training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

Factory settings

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following functions can be reset to factory settings:

- **Sound settings**
- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox**
- **Directory**
- **Telephone**
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi**
- **Navigation settings**
- **Navigation and online memory**
- **Voice recognition system**
- **Message settings**
- **Apps**
- **Tool tips**
- **Audi connect**

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the option **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Tips

Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if applicable.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager provides an overview of your connected devices and their network status:

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
- Select and confirm a menu item.

If a mobile device was already connected and you select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device name and connection status are displayed under the menu item.

You can individually **connect** ☑ or **disconnect** ☐ a paired device.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 192* and mobile device must be switched on. The mobile device to be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

Primary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Secondary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired, or
- Insert your mini SIM card into the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 143*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

myAudi app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Requirement: the myAudi app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- **List of devices already paired**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth or Wi-Fi audio player

Bluetooth audio player

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 192* and on the Bluetooth audio player.

- **Connect new device**: press the control knob.
- Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player**.
- Search for and connect a mobile device.
- **List of devices already paired**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Wi-Fi audio player

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI ⇨ *page 147* and on your Wi-Fi audio player must be switched on.

- **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
- **Disconnect Wi-Fi audio player**: deactivate the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 142*.

Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Display contacts from a cell phone (or an additional cell phone).

Requirement: no cell phones can be connected to the MMI using the **Handsfree** profile.

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone.
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already paired.

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

- Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 176* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 175, fig. 150*.
- Select your cell phone from the list of cell phones that have already been connected.

Additional options

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager.

Delete Bluetooth device

The selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI and is removed from the list of all devices that are already paired.

Show Bluetooth profiles

You can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Messages**, **Directory/contacts** and **Bluetooth audio player** profiles separately. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Bluetooth settings

- **Bluetooth**: select and confirm a setting for the Bluetooth connection visibility. Select **Visible** for the MMI to be visible to other devices. Select **Invisible** for the MMI to not be visible to other devices. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. Select **Off** to turn visibility off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.
- **Bluetooth audio player**: when this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
- **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example "AUDI MMI") is displayed and can be changed.

Online settings

- **Data connection settings**: see ⇨ *page 146, Cell phone network*.
- **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
- **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 147*.

SIM PIN settings

- **Automatic PIN entry**: when this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is automatically saved in the MMI after it is entered for the first time. The SIM PIN for four different SIM cards can be saved in the MMI. With the function switched off ☐, the SIM PIN that is currently stored will be deleted from the MMI. When the automatic PIN entry is switched on, there are no SIM PIN prompts.
- **Disable PIN query**: when switched on, there are no SIM PIN queries. The automatic PIN entry is not used in this case.
- **Change PIN**: you can change the PIN on your SIM card. First enter the current SIM PIN. The SIM PIN may only contain digits 0-9. The new SIM PIN must be entered twice for security and then it will be saved to the SIM card.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

See ⇨ *page 193*.

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information regarding the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto and information about device-specific data exchange.

Delete Apple CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: your cell phone must not be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone interface** > a device from the list > right control button.

To remove your mobile device from the list, select and confirm **Delete Apple CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

Tips

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN queries to be switched off.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

- **System update**: insert the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 170*. Select and confirm: *the drive* > **Start update**. The length of the process depends on the size of the update.
- **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery.
- **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

Sound settings

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble/Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (Sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear**: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch**: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel in the desired direction.

Sound effects

Focus: you can optimize the sound distribution for various locations in the vehicle.

Speed dependent volume control

Turn the control knob to adjust the playback volume to the noise inside the vehicle.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system*) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.

▸ **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *page 111, fig. 113* to the right or left.
▸ **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly, or:
▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the left until the symbol ⑫ ⇨ *page 120* appears. An active audio/video source* is stopped.
▸ **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly, or:
▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the right.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the MMI is switched on.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Mute telephone: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

Ringtone: see ⇨ *page 140,* **Ringtone and volume settings**.

Ringtone volume: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

Message volume: you can adjust the volume of the notification for an incoming text message by turning the control knob.

Microphone input level: you can adjust the call volume during a phone call by turning the control knob.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Voice guidance: see ⇨ *page 157.* ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Voice guidance during phone call: see ⇨ *page 157*.

Voice guidance volume: you can adjust the voice guidance volume by turning the control knob or you can adjust it while route guidance is active by turning the On/Off knob.

Entertainment fader: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice recognition system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Short dialog: see ⇨ *page 190*.

Speech dialog system volume: see ⇨ *page 190*.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the volume of the signal tone by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.
– **Adjusting** the **Rear volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

MMI touch*

Turn the control knob to adjust the volume of the spoken prompts from the MMI touch*.

Audi Heartbeat

You can adjust the volume of Audi Heartbeat by turning the control knob.

Restarting the MMI

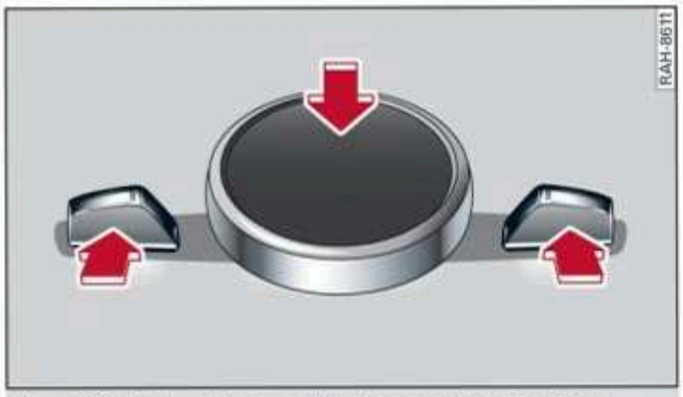


Fig. 158 MMI control panel: button combination for restart

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both buttons *at the same time* to immediately open the menu upward ⇨ *fig. 158*.

Software license information

Information on MMI software and licensing agreements

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**, or:
▸ online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Information on instrument cluster software and licensing agreements

▸ Press the reset button 0.0 twice within five seconds of switching the ignition on.

OwnersManuals2.com

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door (examples):

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ ⓘ.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R+M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R+M)/2 93 / SUPER PLUS MIN. RON 98

Using premium plus gasoline with at least 93 AKI / 98 RON is recommended.

If no premium plus gasoline is available, you can also use premium gasoline with 91 AKI / 95 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

- Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
- When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol (ethanol)

You can fuel your vehicle with unleaded gasoline that has an ethanol content of up to 15%, for example "E15".

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, refueling at high-traffic gas stations is recommended. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

- Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
- Ethanol fuels with a high ethanol percentage, such as E30 – E100, must **not** be used. The fuel system will be damaged!
- Methanol fuels with a high methanol percentage, such as M5 – M100, must **not** be used. The fuel system and the engine will be damaged!
- If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.
- Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
- Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
- If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

to such gasoline mixtures, Audi recommends fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

- Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Only gasoline additives that have been approved by Audi may be used.

Refueling

Fueling procedure

Your vehicle is equipped with a capless fuel filler system.

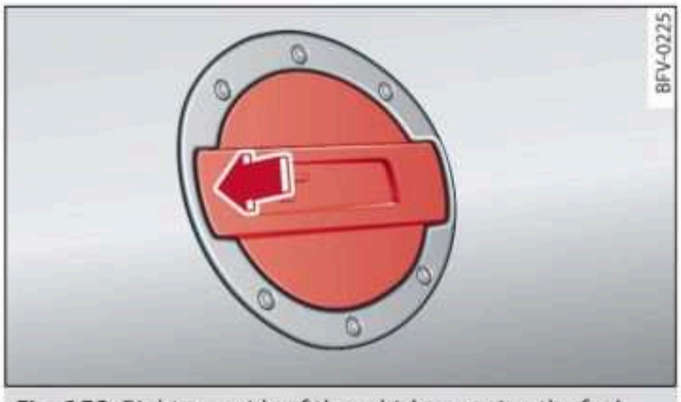


Fig. 159 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

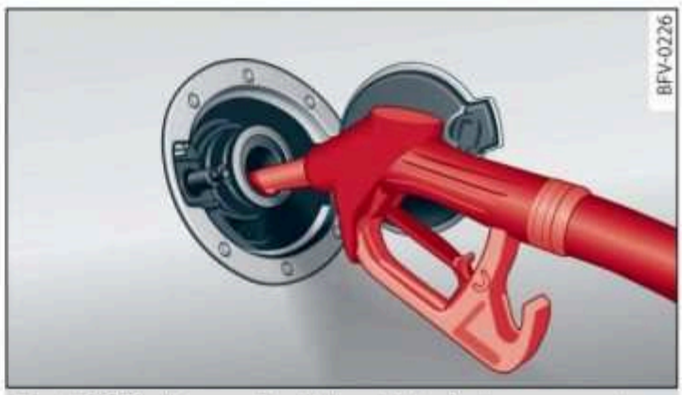


Fig. 160 Right rear side of the vehicle: fuel pump nozzle inserted

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 159*.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel tank filler neck ⇨ *fig. 160*. Make sure it is seated correctly.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 195*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 260*.

Messages

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the indicator light appears with a corresponding message, refuel the vehicle.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

Audi does not recommend transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

Note

- Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

- Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.
- Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

- If adverse weather conditions cause the fuel filler door to freeze shut, press on the center of the filler door with the heel of your hand and then try opening it again.
- The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Tips

- Your vehicle is equipped with a misfueling guard. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with the correct fuel pump nozzle.
- A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling guard. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump, or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- The misfueling guard does not open when adding fuel from a fuel container. When ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

refueling with a reserve canister, you must use the funnel stored in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 198, fig. 161*.

Fueling with reserve canister (emergency fueling)



Fig. 161 Luggage compartment: funnel

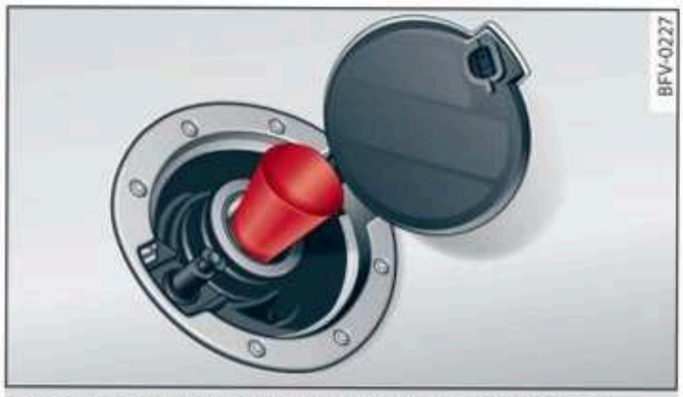


Fig. 162 Fuel tank filler neck with the mounted funnel

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Fueling procedure on page 197*.

- ▸ Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 240*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic floor panel ⇨ *page 68, fig. 75*.
- ▸ Remove the funnel from the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 196, fig. 159*.
- ▸ Insert the funnel into the fuel filler neck all the way until it stops ⇨ *fig. 162*. Make sure that the ring on the funnel goes into the fuel tank filler neck.
- ▸ Guide the reserve canister filler tube into the funnel and start the emergency fueling.
- ▸ Remove and clean the funnel after the fueling process. Then close the fuel filler door and press on it until it latches.

Note

Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.

Fuel filler door emergency release

- ▸ Seek help from a qualified person if you cannot open the fuel filler door.
- ▸ Afterward, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Emissions control system

General information

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
- Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Catalytic converter

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 198, General information*.

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

OwnersManuals2.com

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction related to emissions which can, for example, cause poor emissions quality and damage to the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine compartment

General information

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area. ⇨ ⚠.

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings - there is a risk for injury!
	Hot motor components! Rotating parts!
	The radiator fan can switch on at any time!
	High voltage! Switch off the engine before coming into contact with any ignition system components!
	The catalytic converter can be damaged if the oil level is too high!
	Hot coolant - there is a risk of scalding!
	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

⚠ WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" (Park) selector lever position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must never be opened when the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure. There is a risk of burns
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
- If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
- If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
  - Set the parking brake first and select the "P" (Park) selector lever position.
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

to the body to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 163 Section from the driver's side footwell: release lever



Fig. 164 Unlocked hood: lever

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- With the door open, pull the lever [1] below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 163*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 164* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- Open the hood. ▶

[1] The symbol is not available in all countries.

OwnersManuals2.com

Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the struts.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Message

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock

The hood latch is not locked correctly. Stop immediately and close the hood.

⚠ WARNING

- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- For safety reasons, the hood must always be latched securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
- If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

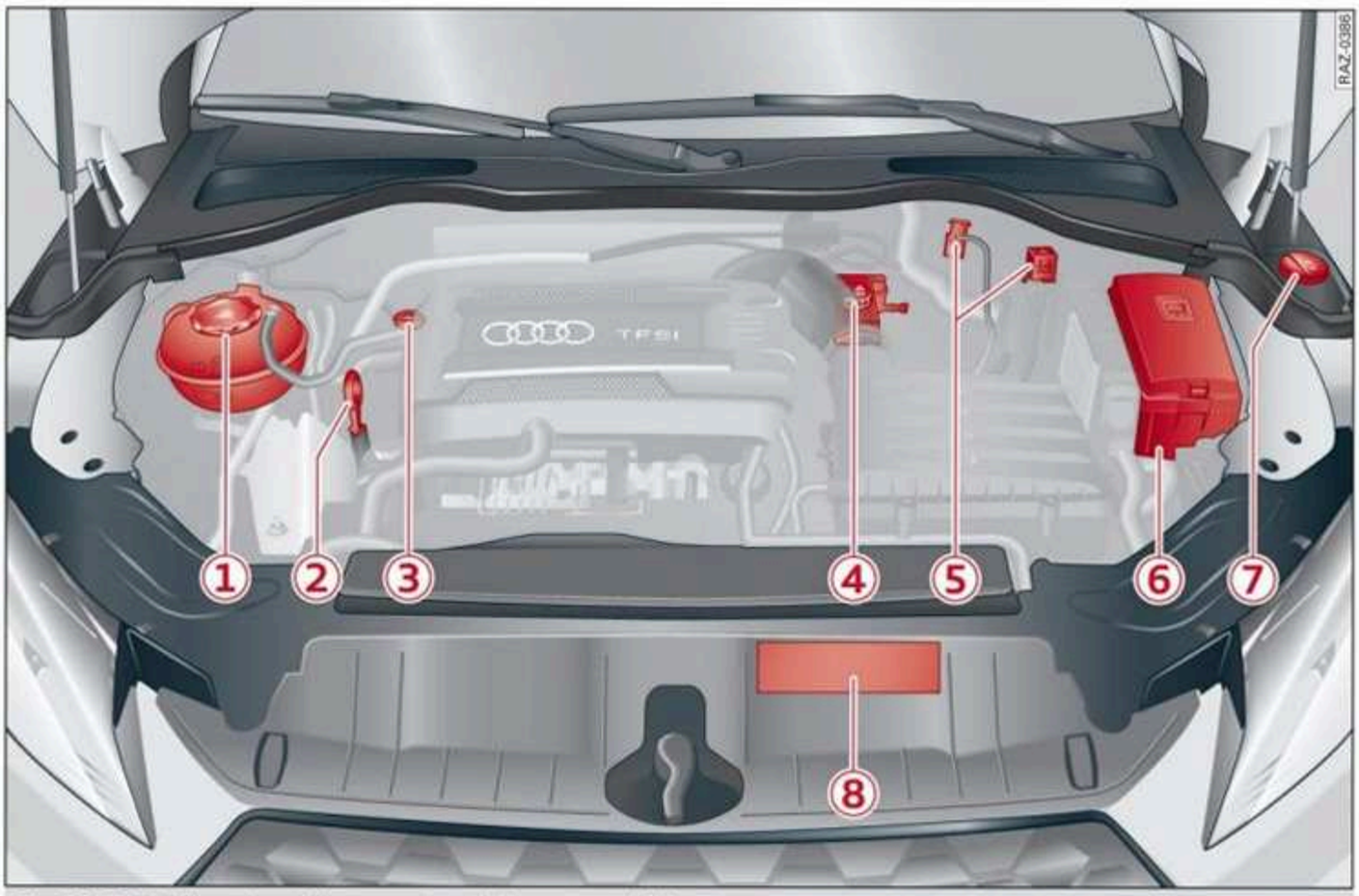


Fig. 165 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information.*

① Coolant expansion tank (⚠) ⇨ *page 207*

② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 203*

③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 203*

④ Brake fluid reservoir (⚠) ⇨ *page 208* ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

⑤ Jump start point (+) under a cover, (-) body ground point ⇨ *page 247*
⑥ Fuse housing ⇨ *page 251*
⑦ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 211*
⑧ Sticker for engine oil specifications ⇨ *page 202*

The engine oil dipstick and the engine oil filling opening may be located in different places within the engine compartment, depending on the engine version. Depending on the engine, the coolant expansion tank may look different.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

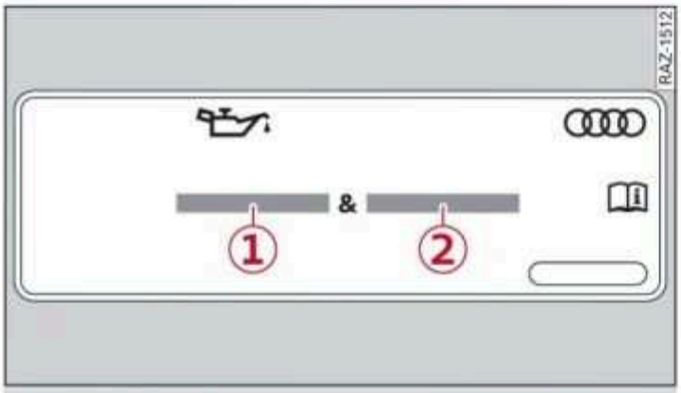


Fig. 166 Engine oil sticker

– ① Engine oil viscosity
– ② Engine oil standard

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that meets the engine oil standard listed on the sticker ⇨ *fig. 166*. The sticker with the specified standard is located in the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 201, fig. 165*. When using the specified engine oil, you can adjust the oil level as often as needed.

If engine oil that meets the recommended specification is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) engine oil of the that meets the following different standard **one time** until the next regular oil change.

– Standard VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes within these standards are permitted.

Audi recommends having the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Note

Audi recommends using approved engine oil that meets the respective VW standard. Using engine oils which do not meet these quality standards can cause damage to the engine. As an exception and only in an emergency, 0.5 qt (0.5 l) of engine oil that differs from the standards listed may be used.

Tips

Audi recommends using engine oils provided by Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 203*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 204*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning:

Please check oil level

– You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 203, Checking the engine oil level*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Please drive to warm up engine

Especially low outside temperatures are a main reason why fuel may get into the engine oil. The fuel can only evaporate from the engine oil if the engine oil temperature is high enough.

Drive in the "S" gear.

Drive the engine at higher RPMs while avoiding full acceleration.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes. The indicator light may not turn off during this time. Repeat the steps that are described at any time.

Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction if the indicator light does not turn off after a few drives.

WARNING

When the message **Please drive to warm up engine** appears, adjust your speed according to the weather, road, terrain, and traffic conditions. You should never disobey the traffic laws applicable in the country in which you are driving in order to follow driving recommendations.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

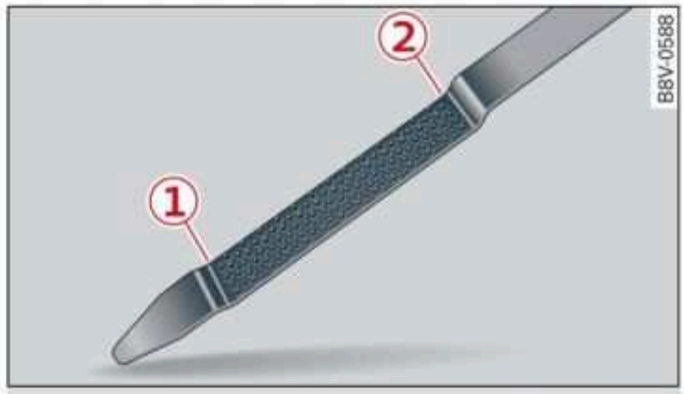


Fig. 167 Oil dipstick (example): checking the engine oil level

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- Wait approximately five minutes so that the engine oil can flow back into the engine oil pan.
- Open the hood ⇨ *page 200*.
- Remove the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 201, fig. 165*, wipe it off with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
- Remove the oil dipstick again and then read the oil level ⇨ *table on page 203*.
- Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 204*.

Areas on the oil dipstick ⇨ *fig. 167*.	
①	If the engine oil level is just over the marking ①, then engine oil must be added. See ⇨ ①.
②	Do not add engine oil.

Note

– The engine oil level must not be below the marking ①, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
– After adding engine oil, the oil level must not be above the marking ② ⇨ *fig. 167*, because this increases the risk of catalytic converter and/or engine damage. If the oil level is above the marking ②, drive to an ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have any engine oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

- Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
- Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
- Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.
- If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
- You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 168 Engine compartment: engine oil filling opening cover (example)

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 200*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 168*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 202*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 203, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Applies to: using engine oil that meets the recommended specification: Add some more engine oil again if necessary.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler cap and push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 200*.

WARNING

- When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
- You must close the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
- Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

- Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
- Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
- Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

Audi recommends having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, Audi recommends having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:

- Wear protective eyewear.
- Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.
- Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
- Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
- Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 206*. However, you should occasionally check the coolant level.

Messages

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Turn off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the ignition off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 207*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 207*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only add the following coolant additives mixed with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the G12evo coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use distilled water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.
– You can continue driving if the permitted G12evo coolant additive was not added. However, go to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the coolant replaced to reduce the risk of engine damage.
– Due to the risk of engine damage, the cooling system should only be refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can also provide you with important information about the recommended coolant additive.

OwnersManuals2.com

Checking coolant

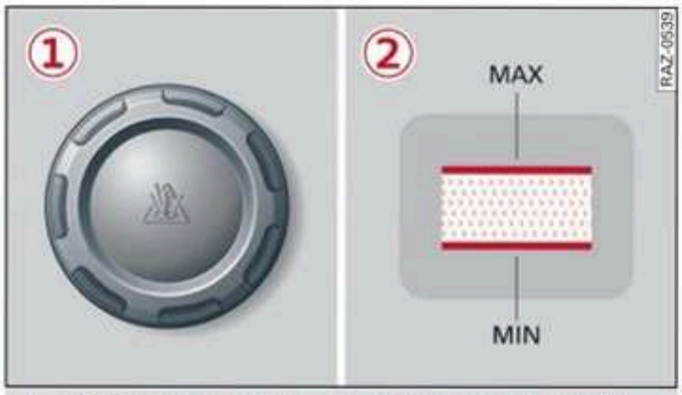


Fig. 169 Engine compartment - coolant expansion tank (diagram): ① cover; ② markings

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

Checking the coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 200*.
- ▸ Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 201, fig. 165* using the outer markings ② ⇨ *fig. 169*. The coolant level must be between the markings ② when the engine is cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ ⓘ.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Audi recommends mixing the coolant additive with distilled water.

- ▸ Allow the engine to cool.
- ▸ Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cap.
- ▸ Remove the cover ① ⇨ *fig. 169* carefully to the left ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add the correct mixture ratio of coolant ⇨ *page 206* up to the upper marking ② ⇨ *fig. 169*.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

- The engine compartment in any vehicle is a potentially dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 199, General information*.
- Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
- Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

ⓘ Note

Do not continue driving if the coolant expansion tank is empty. Do not add any coolant, because air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

OwnersManuals2.com

Brake fluid

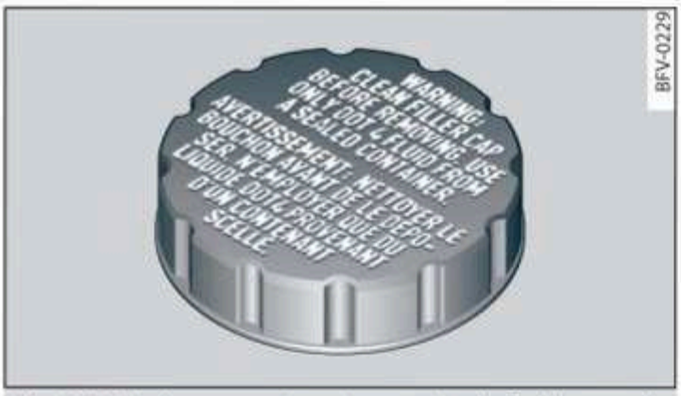


Fig. 170 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information*.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 201, fig. 165*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Message

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

BRAKE / Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

⚠ WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.
- Reusing brake fluid or using brake fluid that is not permitted for your vehicle will significantly impair the braking performance and can even lead to a failure of the brake system. The manufacturer of the vehicle is not liable for failures or damage resulting from this. It will also not be covered by the warranty.

Note

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

If the or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the generator, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

Electrical system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

or

Electric system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

Safely stop your vehicle, do not continue driving and switch the ignition off ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

- If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.
- If the message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

⚠ WARNING

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving and switch the ignition off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

- Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 210, Safety precautions*
- Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 210, Safety precautions*

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. The convenience functions will be available again when you start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 211*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins.

Replacing the battery

Applies to: 12 volt vehicle battery

All work on the battery must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

The 12 volt vehicle battery was developed based on the installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced, ask your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility about the electromagnetic compatibility, size, and the necessary maintenance, power, and safety standards for the new 12 volt vehicle battery. The battery vent of the 12 volt vehicle battery must always be on the negative terminal side. The battery vent on the positive terminal side must always be closed.

When replacing the 12 volt lead-acid vehicle battery, only use a maintenance-free 12 volt lead-acid battery that conforms to the TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 standards. These standards must be from October 2014 or newer. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Always have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility replace the 12 volt vehicle battery, because and adaptation must be performed on the vehicle electrical system when the battery is replaced. Only an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility has the necessary technology to perform the adaption correctly. Otherwise, there could be a loss of safety-related functions among other things, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Never connect the charging cable or jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 211*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 211, Charging the battery*.
- Always have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility replace the 12 volt vehicle battery, because and adaptation must be performed on the vehicle electrical system when the battery is replaced. Only an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility has the necessary technology to perform the adaption correctly.
- Using unsuitable batteries may void the vehicle's operating license.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Safety precautions

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings - there is a risk for injury!
	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.
	Electrolyte fluid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. **First aid**: if electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, immediately flush with clean water for several minutes. Seek medical attention immediately. Immediately neutralize electrolyte fluid on the skin or clothing using a soap solution and rinse with plenty of water. If electrolyte fluid is accidentally ingested, seek medical attention immediately.
	Always wear eye protection.
	If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, immediately flush with clean water for several minutes. Seek medical attention immediately.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are prohibited. Avoid creation of sparks and short circuits when handling cables and electrical devices.
	Always keep children away from battery electrolyte fluid and the battery.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Gases that escape from these batteries can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these batteries can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

Charging the battery



Fig. 171 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger or jump start cables

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information,* ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 210* and ⇨ ⚠.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected.

The charging cable connections are located in the engine compartment. The ground point ⊖ is always located on the vehicle body.

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Open the hood ⇨ *page 200.*
- Open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 171.*
- Clamp the terminal clamps on the charger correctly onto the positive terminal ⊕ and the ground point ⊖.
- Insert the power cable for the charger into the socket and switch the charger on.
- At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- Remove the charger terminal clamps.
- Close the cover on the positive terminal.
- Close the hood ⇨ *page 200.*

WARNING

– Never connect the charging cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 211.*
– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte fluid can leak, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 172 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information.* ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

8S1012721BH

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system*⇨ *page 201, fig. 165*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 260*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Message

The following messages may appear depending on the vehicle equipment:

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder**: after a certain distance driven, a message may appear in the Infotainment system display each time the ignition is switched on or off, depending on vehicle equipment. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on or off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the display, select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

WARNING

Inadequate service, a lack of service, or failing to adhere to the service intervals can result in the vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents, and serious injuries.

Note

- Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
- Regular service work on the vehicle is not only beneficial for the sustainable use and retention of the vehicle value, but also for the operational and traffic safety. For this reason, always have service work performed according to the Audi guidelines.
- Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle that occurred due to inadequate service or insufficient part availability.

OwnersManuals2.com

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

The combination of a rim and tire will be referred to as a wheel in this Owner's Manual. If only one of the components is referred to, then the term tire or rim will be used.

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires. ▸

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances. The exception to this are rims that are part of complete winter wheels provided by the factory.

Tire designations

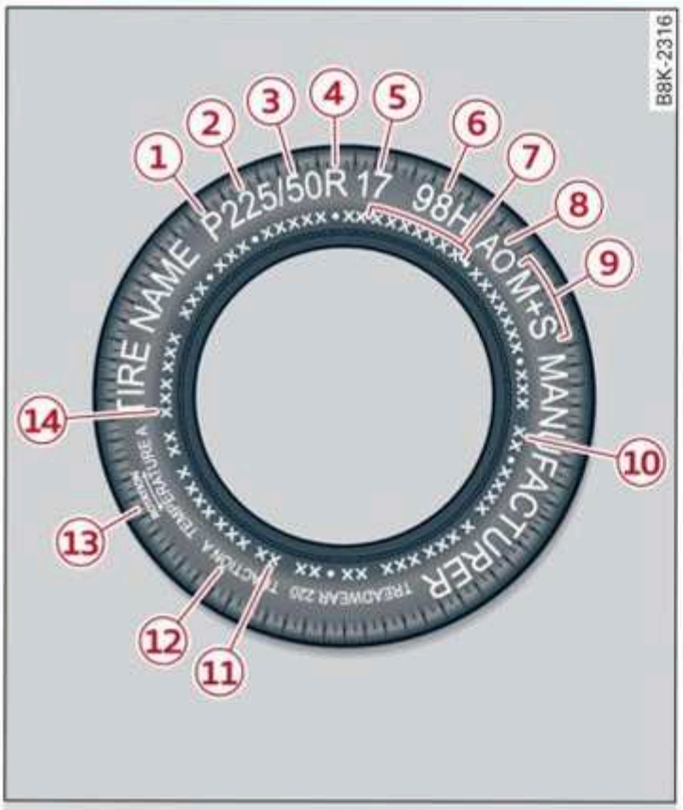


Fig. 173 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 213.*

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR".

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2222 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2022.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation "AO" have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction, and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 229*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

specified running direction ⇨ *page 245*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 216, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 215*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 213*.

Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 222, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2222 ... ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2022. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 225*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 224, fig. 176* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 225* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimal gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels. ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

- Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

–Mounting a tire on the rim incorrectly can result in tire damage or failure. To reduce the risk of an accident, only trained personnel may mount a tire on the rim.

Tire wear and damage

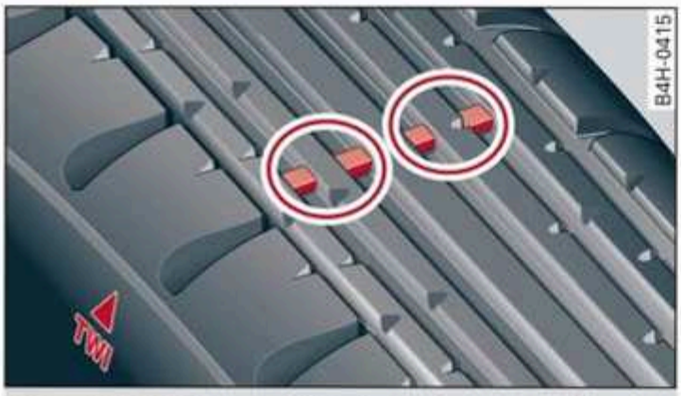


Fig. 174 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.

–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 174*. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 245*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

OwnersManuals2.com

Tire pressure



Fig. 175 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

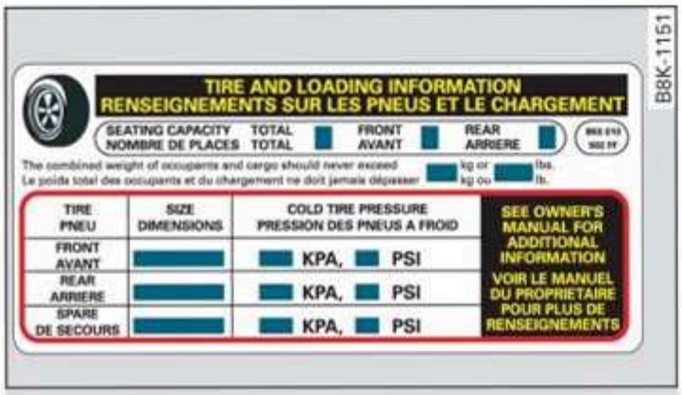


Fig. 176 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted at the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 175*, ⇨ *fig. 176*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 225*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Refer to the sticker ⇨ *fig. 176* for the correct tire pressure.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Store the new tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 232*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 226*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if ▸

OwnersManuals2.com

the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 224, fig. 175*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2 people)				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
TT Coupe: 2.0L 4-cylinder	245/40 R18 93Y	220	32	200	29	230	33	210	30
	245/35 R19 93Y	240	35	220	32	240	35	220	32
	245/40 R18 93H	220	32	200	29	230	33	210	30
	255/30 R20 92Y	240	35	220	32	250	36	220	32
TTS Coupe: 2.0L 4-cylinder	245/40 R18 93Y	220	32	200	29	230	33	210	30
	245/35 R19 93Y	240	35	220	32	260	38	220	32
	255/30 R20 92Y	240	35	220	32	270	39	230	33

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2 people)				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
TT Roadster: 2.0L 4-cylinder	245/40 R18 93Y	220	32	200	29	230	33	210	30
	245/35 R19 93Y	240	35	220	32	240	35	220	32
	245/40 R18 93H	220	32	200	29	230	33	210	30
	255/30 R20 92Y	240	35	220	32	260	38	220	32

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 224* and load limits ⇨ *page 226*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

carried in the vehicle is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 224, fig. 176*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 224, fig. 176*.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 214, fig. 173*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 245, Finishing*.

- Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 213*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 224*. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.16 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ❄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 106*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 224*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 214, fig. 173*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the tire pressure monitoring indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the Infotainment system display with an indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 232*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 224, fig. 176*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- The tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
- The tire has structural damage
- The tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 232*
- The spare tire* is installed

Indicator lights

If the indicator light turns on, there is a loss of pressure in at least one tire .⇨ ⚠ Check the tires and replace if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 232*.

TPMS Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual

If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 232*. In some cases, you must drive for several minutes after storing the pressures until the indicator light turns off. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

⚠ WARNING

- If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with "Audi Original Tires" ⇨ *page 220*. Audi recommends using these tires.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures in all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 222*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

OwnersManuals2.com

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct the stream of water directly onto seals for the side windows, doors, luggage compartment lid, or hood, or onto the tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors*, or camera lenses*. Maintain a distance of at least 16 inches (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and power top* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Make sure that the vehicle is still able to roll during the washing process in the car wash. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the extendable rear spoiler* if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- Make sure there is sufficient ground clearance when driving into a car wash with a conveyor belt ⇨ *page 75*. There is risk of damage because the vehicle could come in contact with the guide rails.
- Using a pressure washer incorrectly can cause damage. Never direct a stream of water directly onto electrical/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. Such components can be seriously damaged by the entry of fluids and by pressure, and this can lead to component failure.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
- When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner, ⇨ *page 43*
Headlights/ tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

OwnersManuals2.com

Component	Situation	Solution
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning product Camera lenses: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Rear spoiler	Deposits	Clean similar to painted parts ⇨ *page 233*; remove dust in the rear spoiler compartment
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Power top	Deposits	Clean water, power top cleaning product, if necessary. Clean with the grain of the fabric using a soft brush and allow to air dry.
Wind deflector	Deposits	Water, mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Decorative parts and trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Rubber seals	Deposits	Microfiber cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Frost	Protect the seals on doors, covers, and lids from freezing using a suitable care product
Paint	Paint damage	Repair with touch-up paint
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth

OwnersManuals2.com

Component	Situation	Solution
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 233*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Window glass	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts and trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract
Textiles, artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Component	Situation	Solution
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.

Note

- **Headlights and tail lights**
  - Never clean the headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge because the lights could be damaged.
  - Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Power top**
  - Remove bird droppings immediately.
  - Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or other solvents to remove.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts and trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Rubber seals**
  - There is a risk of damage if chemical cleaning solutions or solvents are used.
- **Paint**

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.

– **Decorative decals**
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
- Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.

– **Instrument cluster**
- Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
- The instrument cluster and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could get scratched.
- Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
- Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
- Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

OwnersManuals2.com

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. You can obtain information about the steps to complete depending on the conditions for taking the vehicle out of service (duration, location, etc.).

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of others on the road.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor



Fig. 177 Luggage compartment: cargo area floor

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and compressor are located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor.

- Push on the plastic handle and lift up the cargo floor.
- Open the cargo floor.

Completely retract the vehicle jack arm before storing the vehicle jack*.

Tips

The vehicle jack* does not require any maintenance.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 240, General information.*
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" position.
- Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 240.*

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 178 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit can be used at temperatures as low as -4 °F (-20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 inch (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 178*
– If the rim is damaged ②
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
– If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electrical/electronic devices must be disposed of in an environmentally safe manner.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.
– Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

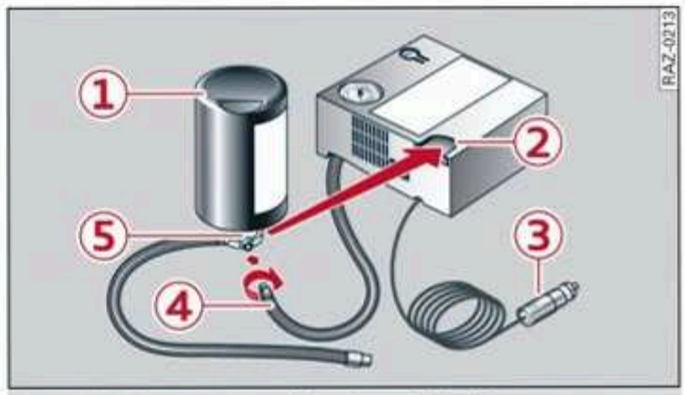


Fig. 179 Components of the tire mobility kit

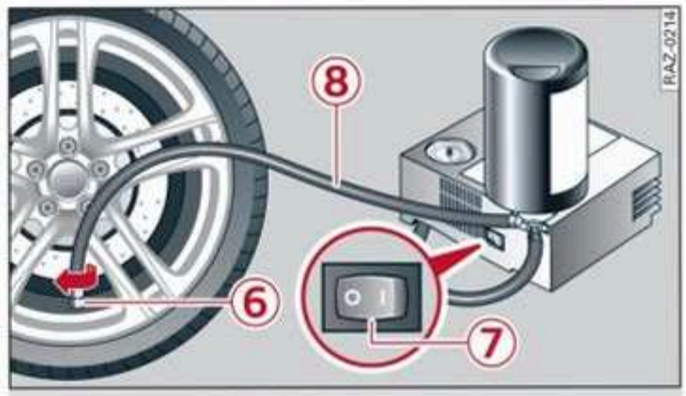


Fig. 180 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 240*.

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- Remove the connector (3) and pressure hose (4) from the bottom of the housing.
- Connect the compressor pressure hose (4) [1] to the flange (5) on the tire sealant bottle (1).
- Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (2) on the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- Connect the filler hose (8) to the valve (6) ⇨ *fig. 180*.
- Connect the plug (3) ⇨ *fig. 179* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- Switch the ignition on.

Inflating a tire

- Move the switch (7) ⇨ *fig. 180* on the compressor into position **I**. ▶

[1] The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

OwnersManuals2.com

- Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
- If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
- If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:

- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
- The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
- If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Replacing wheels

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 240, General information*.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" position.
- Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 240* and the spare tire ⇨ *page 246*.

WARNING

The vehicle must also be secured to prevent it from rolling when using the vehicle jack*. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

OwnersManuals2.com

Removing the cover



Fig. 181 Wheel: wheel hub cover



Fig. 182 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

Wheel hub covers*

- Insert the hook (from the vehicle tool kit) into the hole on the wheel hub cover ⇨ *fig. 181*.
- Remove the wheel hub cover.

Wheel bolts with caps*

- Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

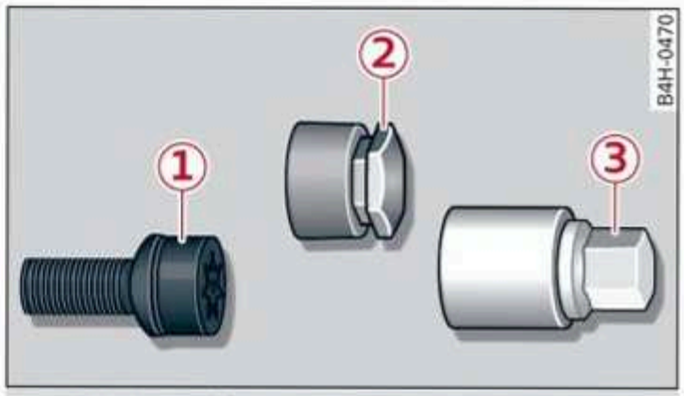


Fig. 183 Anti-theft wheel bolt with cap and adapter

You need a special adapter in the vehicle tool kit to remove the anti-theft wheel bolts.

- Remove the wheel hub cover* or cap* ② ⇨ *fig. 183*.
- Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- Slide the wheel wrench* from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the adapter ③.
- Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 243*.

Tips

Note the code number for the wheel bolt adapter and store it in a safe place separate from the vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and give them the code number.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 184 Wheel: loosening the wheel bolts ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

- Slide the wheel wrench* from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the wheel bolt[1].
- Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench*. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench* with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack

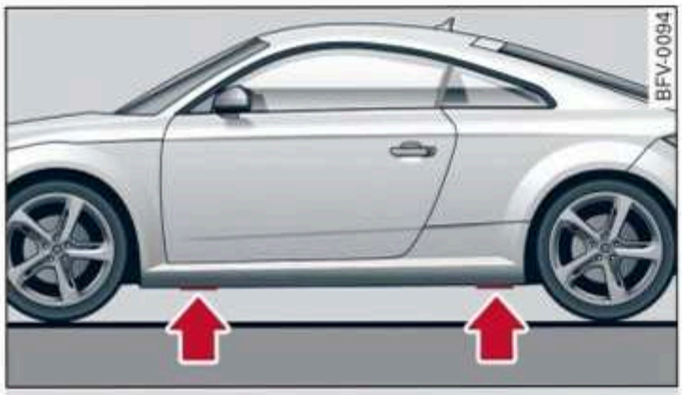


Fig. 185 Sill panels: markings

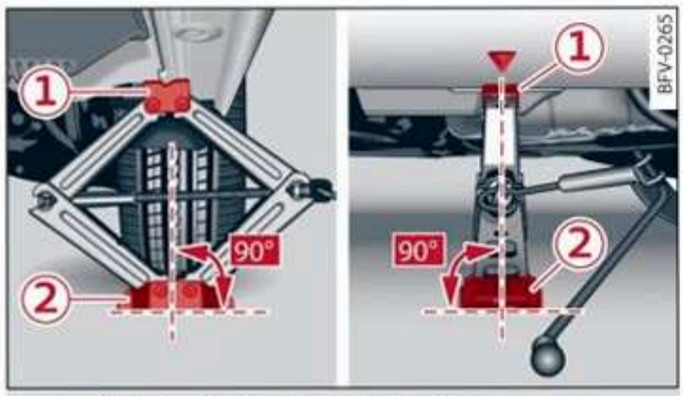


Fig. 186 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- Place the vehicle jack from the vehicle tool kit on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 185*. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack.
- Turn the vehicle jack located under the mounting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm ① ⇨ *fig. 186* is located under the designated mounting point.
- Align the vehicle jack so the arm ① engages in the designated mounting point in the side sill and the base ② lies flat on the ground. The base ② must be directly under the mounting point ①.
- Continue raising the vehicle jack until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.
- Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury is increased when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.
- Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle could slip and cause injury.
- Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of injury, do not raise any other vehicles or other loads using the vehicle jack provided by the factory.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
- To reduce the risk of injury, no work should be performed under the vehicle while it is raised.

Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting ▶

[1] You need the matching adapter in order to loosen and tighten anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 243*.

OwnersManuals2.com

points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

Removing and mounting a wheel



Fig. 187 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts



Fig. 188 Wheel: alignment pin in the top hole

Removing a wheel

- Remove the top wheel bolt completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *fig. 187* and place it on a clean surface.
- Then install the alignment pin from the vehicle tool kit in the empty wheel bolt hole by hand ⇨ *fig. 188*.
- Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pin remains in the hole while doing this.

Installing a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 245* when installing unidirectional tires.

- Slide the wheel on over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- Install the wheel bolts and tighten them gently using the hex socket.
- Remove the alignment pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench*.

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen and tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

- Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 220*.
- Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. Using the hex socket will not achieve the required tightening torque, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimal performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- Reinstall any covers on the wheel bolts that were removed.
- Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- If the removed wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, store it securely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 65*.

OwnersManuals2.com

- ▸ Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure and store it in the Infotainment system.
- ▸ The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Have them checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- ▸ Have the faulty wheel replaced as soon as possible.

Spare tire

General information

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)



Fig. 189 Luggage compartment: spare tire

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

The tire pressure must be adjusted to a specified value listed on the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 224, fig. 176*.

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Turn the handle ⇨ *fig. 189* ① counter-clockwise.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Removing the vehicle jack

- ▸ Lift up the cover on the right side of the luggage compartment and remove the vehicle jack.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

⚠ WARNING

- – After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible.
- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- – To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves with the compact spare tire.
- – To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
- – Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Jump starting

Preparation

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 199*.
- Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

- There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
- The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
- Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Jump starting

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.



Fig. 190 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

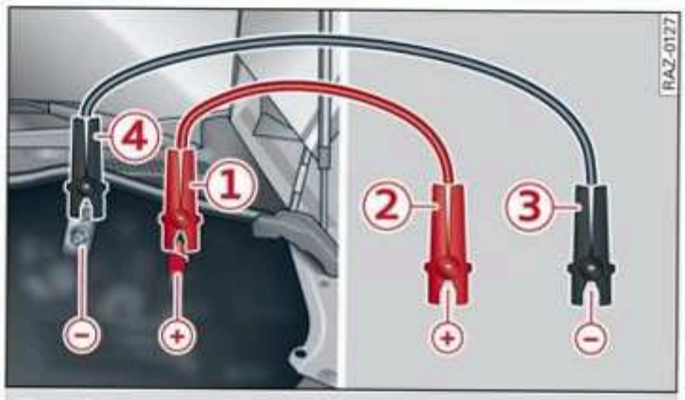


Fig. 191 Connecting the jump start cables

The jump start cable connections are located in the engine compartment.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 209*.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 190*.

1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump start connection ① ⇨ *fig. 191* on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source. ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump start connection ④ on the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
- Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
- If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
- Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump start cables. The headlights must be switched off.
- With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
- Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

WARNING

- Never connect the jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
- The locking bolts on the battery cells must be tightened securely.
- Keep ignition sources (open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
- Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing

General information

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Notes on towing

When the engine is stopped, the transmission will not be sufficiently lubricated if traveling at high speeds and long distances:

- The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any chains or cables around the brake lines.

If the vehicle should be towed with the axle raised, then the ignition must be switched off to reduce the risk of damage to the drivetrain.

Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable similar elastic material.

WARNING

- Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.

Note

- If normal towing is not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.
- If the vehicle is towed by a tow truck at the axle that is not permitted, this can cause severe damage to the transmission.
- The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

Tips

- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the "P" position. The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 88*.
- Follow the local legal regulations for towing.

Towing

Read and follow the important information under ⇨ *page 248*.

Preparations

- Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing loops ⇨ *page 249*, ⇨ *page 250*.
- Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing loop while towing.
- Switch the emergency flashers on in both vehicles ⇨ *page 39*. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

Towing vehicle (front)

- Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
- Be especially careful when accelerating.
- Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed ⇨ ⚠.
- Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle.
- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 80*.
- Select the "N" selector lever position.
- Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

WARNING

- Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.
- If the vehicle runs out of power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and consult an authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility.

Front towing loop



Fig. 192 Front bumper: installing the towing loop ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 240*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 192*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing eye as far as it will go into the mount. Use a suitable object to tighten the towing eye completely and securely in the mount.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Tips

Depending on the model, the shape of the cap can vary.

Rear towing loop

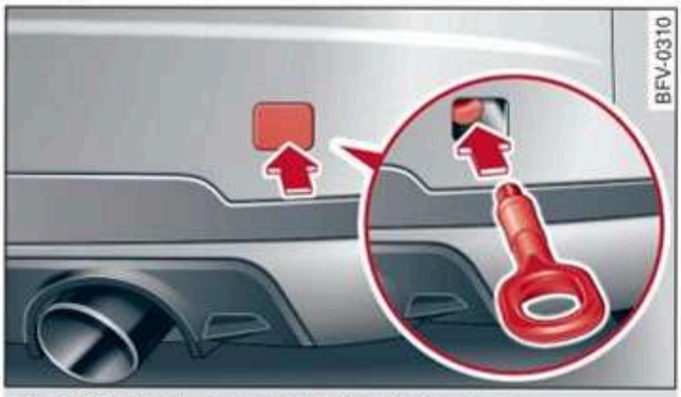


Fig. 193 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right rear of the bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 240*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 193*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing eye as far as it will go into the mount. Use a suitable object to tighten the towing eye completely and securely in the mount.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Tips

Depending on the model, the shape of the cap can vary.

OwnersManuals2.com

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses



Fig. 194 Steering column area: cover

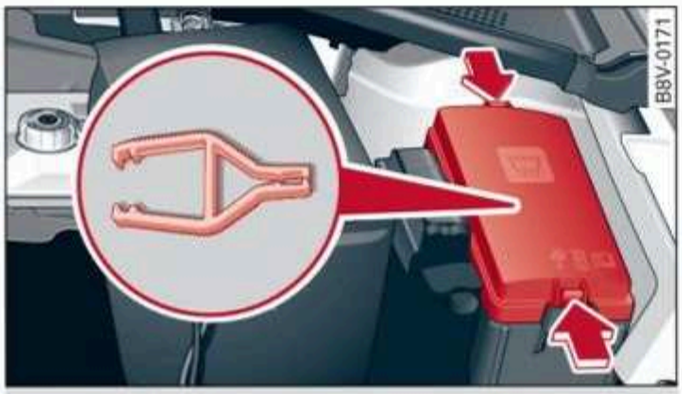


Fig. 195 Left side of the engine compartment: fuse cover

Fuses are installed in various locations in your vehicle. The following information only lists fuses that you can change yourself. To have other fuses changed, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through. The fuses are located in the interior and in the engine compartment.

Fuses in the interior

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- Check the table that follows to see which fuse belongs to the affected equipment.
- Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 194*.
- Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 195*.
- Remove the fuse using the clip.
- Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same amp rating.
- Install the cover.

Fuses in the engine compartment

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off ⇨ ⚠.
- Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 253*.
- Remove the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 195*.
- Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 195*.
- Remove the fuse using the clip.
- Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same amp rating.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Gray	2
Purple	3
Pink	4
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red (narrow)	10
Light blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Light green	30
Teal	35
Orange	40
Red (wide)	50

⚠ WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and increases the risk of fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Tips

Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment – interior



Fig. 196 Vehicle interior: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
1	Engine components
4	Infotainment control panel, sound system
5	Diagnostic interface
6	Automatic transmission selector lever
7	Climate control systems control panel, rear window heating, tire pressure monitoring
8	Parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, roof electronics control module, diagnostic interface, emergency call and communication control module, consumption monitoring, anti-theft alarm system
9	Steering column electronics
10	Vehicle positioning
11	All wheel drive control module, vehicle electrical system control module
12	Sound system, Infotainment system
14	Climate control system blower
15	Electronic steering column lock
16	Exterior antenna, Infotainment system
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call and communication control module
18	Rearview camera
19	Convenience access and start authorization control module
20	Driver's and front passenger's lumbar support
22	Front passenger's side neck heating (Roadster)
24	Right vehicle electrical system control module
25	Driver's side power window
26	Seat heating
27	Vehicle electrical system control module
28	Audi music interface, USB connection
29	Luggage compartment lighting
32	Driver assistance systems
33	Airbag, front passenger's seat electronics, roof electronics control module
34	Hold assist button, engine sound control module, tail light switch, climate control system pressure sensor, neck heating, 12 volt sockets, garage door opener
35	Diagnostics, headlamp range control, air quality sensor, rearview mirror, cockpit switch module
36	Right headlight
37	Left headlight
38	Engine control module, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
39	Front passenger's side power window
40	12 volt socket
41	Fuel leak diagnosis
42	Vehicle electrical system control module, central locking
44	All wheel drive control module
45	Driver's side seat adjustment

OwnersManuals2.com

No.	Equipment
46	Driver's side neck heating (Roadster)
49	Engine start, clutch position sensor
52	Control module for suspension control
53	Rear window defogger

The power seats* are protected via **circuit breakers** that automatically switch on after a few seconds after the overload has been reduced.

Fuse assignment - Motor compartment

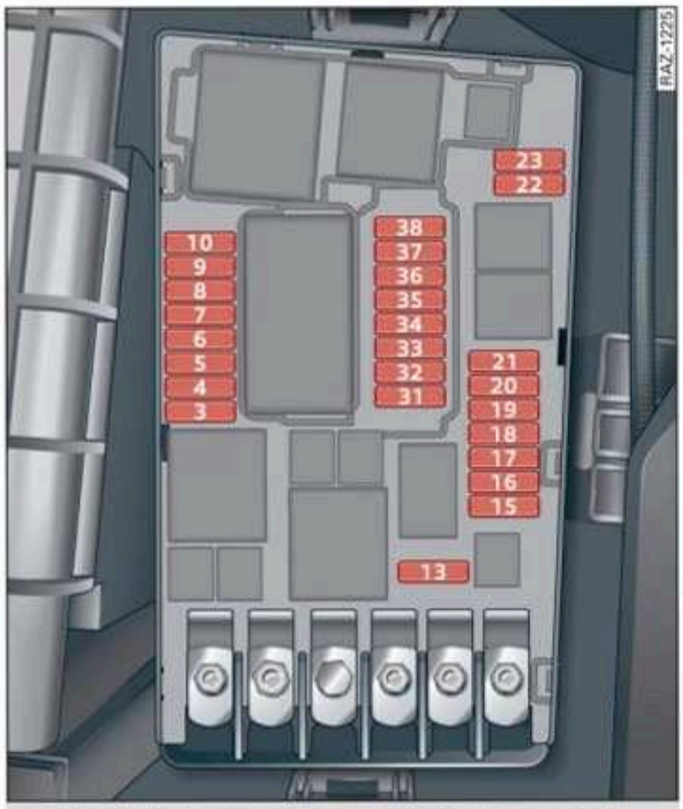


Fig. 197 Left side of engine compartment: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
3	Drive system control module
4	Engine components, engine cooling, oil temperature/oil level sensor
5	Exhaust temperature sensor
6	Brake light sensor
7	Engine cooling, oil pressure regulation
8	Heated oxygen sensors
9	Engine components, exhaust door
10	Fuel pump
13	Transmission fluid pump
15	Horn

No.	Equipment
16	Engine components
17	Suppressor
18	Diagnostic interface, battery monitoring, garage door opener control module
19	Windshield wipers
20	Anti-theft alarm system
21	Transmission control module
22	Drive system control module, diagnosis
23	Engine start
31	Engine components, fuel injectors
35	Climate control system
36	Left headlight
38	Right headlight

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

OwnersManuals2.com

Data privacy

Privacy notice

You can find information about responsibility for data protection in the MMI.

Applies to: MMI: Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

Image recording

Surrounding area monitoring

Applies to: vehicles with surrounding area monitoring

Some vehicle functions require the vehicle's path to be detected and evaluated. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module.

The camera images are transferred to the responsible control module for processing and may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle as needed.

Data memories

Vehicle control modules

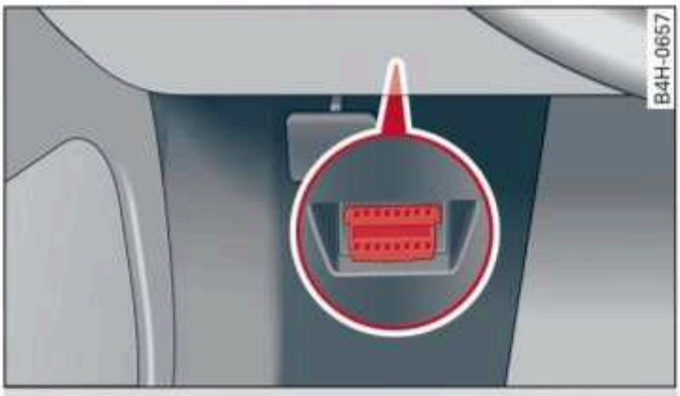


Fig. 198 Driver's side footwell: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. These vehicle control modules store data while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. Only certain types of data are recorded for a very short period of time if a control module has detected a system event. No noises, conversations, or images will be recorded in the vehicle.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of an accident. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connector socket in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and delete the event memory.

WARNING

- Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the motor data.

Crash data recorder

Crash data recorder/event data recorder

Your vehicle is **not** equipped with a crash data recorder.

Vehicle information is stored temporarily in a crash data recorder. This provides detailed insight into the circumstances of an accident. In vehicles with an airbag system, accident-related information such as impact speed, seat belt ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

status, seat positions and deployment times may be stored. The scope of information depends on the particular manufacturer.

The owner must agree to the installation of any such crash data recorder and it is regulated by law in some countries.

Transmitted information

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Privacy**.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Allowing sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate data connection**. The data module for the use of all Audi connect services will be active.

Restricting sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate privacy**. The data connection is limited or deactivated depending on the equipment. The majority of Audi connect services will not be available.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– The following interfaces are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi Smartphone Interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) if equipped.
– If the transmission of data is limited, data will still be transmitted to verify subscriptions.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Audi collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement.

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

OwnersManuals2.com

Accessories and technical changes

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Applies to: USA models: Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
- Applies to: Canada models: Emissions Warranties: *Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Emissions Performance Warranty*
- Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
- Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control System Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet, in the California Emissions Booklet*, or on the applicable website:

- Applies to: USA: maintenance.audiusa.com
- Applies to: Canada: www.audimaintenance.ca or www.audimaintenance.ca/#/search/fr

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

- Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
- Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
- Replacement parts may not always be available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 199, General information* and ⇨ *page 244, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals.

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance work, repairs, or technical modifications to the vehicle (such as installing additional equipment) that is not performed correctly can cause serious injuries and increase the risk of an accident.

WARNING

The engine compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance work, repairs, or technical modifications to the vehicle (such as installing additional equipment) that is not performed correctly can cause vehicle damage.
- The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

▶

OwnersManuals2.com

For the sake of the environment

Certain components in your vehicle such as undeployed airbag modules, pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. Audi recommends having your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

Radio communications equipment

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about installation options and radio communications equipment.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- Never attach accessories, such as telephone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- On vehicles that have factory-installed license plate brackets on the front of the vehicle, the brackets may only be replaced with ones that are the same size and made of the same material. Do not install any license plate brackets on the front of vehicles that do not have factory-installed brackets. Otherwise, the function of the system could be impaired.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171 ▶

OwnersManuals2.com

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov;

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

OwnersManuals2.com

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle data label

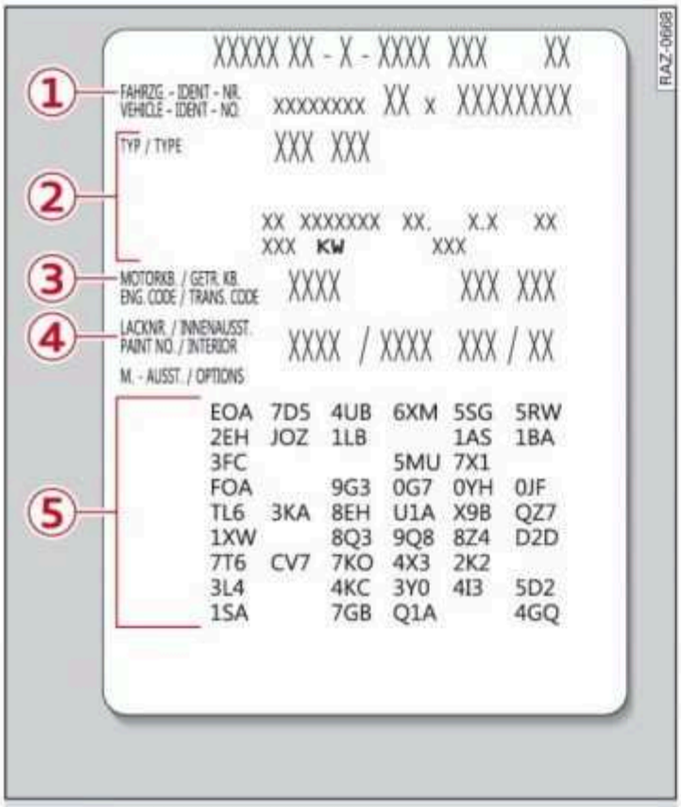


Fig. 199 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 199* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, displacement, motor output, transmission
③ Motor and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle Identification Number

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located in the following areas:

– Select: MENU button > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield*
– Stamped on the right side of the engine compartment under a cover

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
TT Coupe	165.0 (4,191)	72.1 (1,832)	77.4 (1,966)	53.3 (1,353)
TTS Coupe	165.0 (4,191)	72.1 (1,832)	77.4 (1,966)	53.3 (1,353)
TT Roadster	165.0 (4,191)	72.1 (1,832)	77.4 (1,966)	53.4 (1,355)

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	14.5 gal (55 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	4.0 qt (3.8 L)

OwnersManuals2.com

A/C system refrigerant oil

The exact type and amount of refrigerant oil in the A/C system is specified on the sticker on the refrigerant compressor.

	Approximate capacities	Tolerance
Refrigerant oil	80 / 110 g	+/- 10 g

Weights

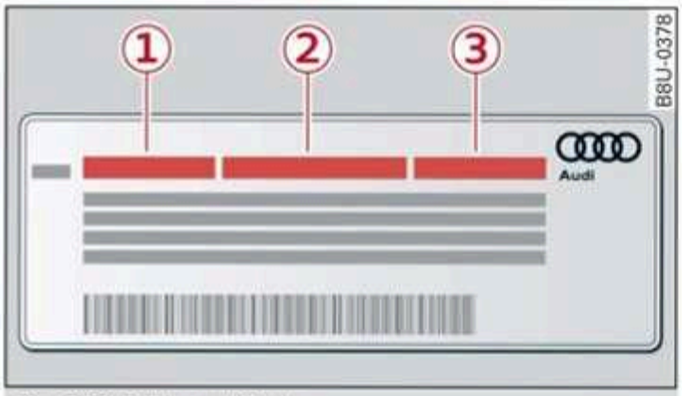


Fig. 200 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight ① of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle ② or the rear axle ③ is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is 165 lb (75 kg).

OwnersManuals2.com

Other information

Brands and licenses

This manual does not contain any symbols, such as ® or ™, to identify trademarks or registered trademarks. However, the absence of these symbols does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with these names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod, iPod shuffle, iPod touch, Apple CarPlay, and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Other product and manufacturer names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with various radio systems, depending on vehicle equipment. The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Tips

Additional information or supplements about the radio systems based on the vehicle equipment and country can be found on the following website: www.audi.com/generalinfo

OwnersManuals2.com

A

A/C cooling mode 71
A/C system refrigerant oil 261
Accessories 258
Active combination filter 70
Adaptive light 97
Adjusting air distribution (automatic climate control system) 71
Adjusting the additional display 14
Adjusting the blower (automatic climate control) 71
Adjusting the center console lighting 40
Adjusting the sound 193
Adjusting the temperature (automatic climate control system) 71
Adjusting the vents 72
Airbag system 53
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 24
Alignment pin (tire change) 240
All-weather lights 37
All season tires 228
All wheel drive
refer to quattro 109
Alternative routes 156
Ambient lighting 40
Android Auto
refer to Audi smartphone interface 187
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 211
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 105
Anti-Slip Regulation 105
Anti-theft alarm system 24
Anti-theft wheel bolts 243
Apple CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 187
Armrest 48
Aspect ratio (video) 180
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 105
Audi adaptive light 37
Audi connect
refer to connect 142
Audi connect Infotainment
Personal hotspot 143
Services overview 145
Audi drive select
refer to Drive select 96
Audi magnetic ride
refer to Suspension control 97
Audi music interface 175
Audi music stream
refer to Wi-Fi 147, 173
Audio files 177
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 172
Wi-Fi audio player 173
Audio track 180
Audi phone box 131
Audi side assist
refer to Side assist 94
Audi smartphone interface 187, 191
Audi virtual cockpit
refer to Instrument cluster 10
AUTO
Automatic headlights 37
Climate control system 71
Auto Lock (central locking) 18
Automatic post-collision braking system . . . 105
Automatic transmission 82
Driving tips 84
Emergency mode 87
Hill descent control 86
Kick-down 87
Malfunction 83
Selector lever emergency release 88
Selector lever lock 83
Selector lever positions 82
Shifting manually 86
Steering wheel with shift paddles 86
tiptronic 86
Automatic wiper/washer system 42
Automatic zoom (navigation) 160
AUX input 176
Average fuel consumption 15
Average speed 15

B

BACK button 111

8S1012721BH

OwnersManuals2.com

Balance (sound) 193
Band
refer to Frequency band 165
Bass (sound) 193
Battery 209
Charging 211
Winter operation 209
Bluetooth
Audio player 172
Connecting a mobile phone 129
Settings 192
Boost 15
Boost pressure indicator 15
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 208
Brakes 107
Brake assist 105
Brake assist system 105
Brake fluid 208
Electromechanical parking brake 80
Emergency braking function 80
New brake pads 107
Brands 262
Break-in security feature 24
Breaking in
New brake pads 107
New tires 220
Browser
refer to Media center 178
Bulb change 253
Buttons
Control panel (MMI) 111

C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connector cable) . . 175
California Proposition 65 Warning 200
Battery specific 210
Call list 133
Call options 140
Capacities
Fuel tank 260
Washer fluid reservoir 260
Car key 19
Car wash 233
Catalytic converter 198
CD drive (media drives) 171
Cell phone
refer to Telephone 129
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 131
Center armrest 48
Central locking 18
Auto Lock 18
Convenience key 22
Convenience opening and closing 28
Mechanically unlocking and locking 24
Remote control key 21
Setting 23
Central locking switch 23
Ceramic brakes 107
Certification 262
Changing bulbs 253
Charging
refer to Power sources 64
Charging the battery (mobile devices) . 131, 176
Child safety seats 58
Securing to the top tether anchor 63
Securing with a safety belt 61
Securing with LATCH 61
Classic view 13
Cleaning 233
Cleaning Alcantara 236
Cleaning artificial leather 236
Cleaning carbon components 236, 237
Cleaning controls 236
Cleaning decorative parts and trim . . . 235, 236
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 235
Cleaning plastic parts 236
Cleaning rubber seals 235
Cleaning tail lights 234
Cleaning textiles 236
Cleaning the wind deflector 235
Climate control system 70
Climate control system (automatic)
Drive select 97
Clock 189
Closing
Convenience closing 28
Hood 200
Luggage compartment lid 25
Windows 27
Cockpit (overview) 6

OwnersManuals2.com

Color code 260
Coming home 39
Command (voice recognition system) 123
Compartments 65
Compass in the mirror 44
Compliance 262
Conference call 134
connect 142
  Data Privacy 255
  Infotainment 142
  Infotainment services 144
Connection manager 190
Connections
  refer to Media 169, 177
Connection settings 190
Consumer information 256
Consumption
  Reducing 75
Consumption (fuel) 15
Contacts 138
  Additional directory 191
  Importing/exporting 139
  Memory capacity 140
  Searching 139
  Showing details 139
  Storing as destination 155
Control buttons 13
Control buttons (operating the MMI) 113
Control knob with joystick function 116
Convenience key 19
  Indicator light 77
  Unlocking and locking 22
Convenience opening and closing
  Setting 28
  Windows 28
Cooling mode 71
Cooling system
  Adding coolant 207
  Checking the coolant level 207
  Coolant 206
  Coolant temperature indicator 10
Crank (power top emergency operation) 35
Crosshairs 151
Cruise control system 90
Cup holders 64
Current fuel consumption 15

D

Data Privacy 255
Date 189
Date display 189
Daytime running lights 37
Declaration of compliance 262
Defrosting (windows) 72
DEF (instrument cluster) 10
Deluxe automatic climate control 71
Demo mode
  refer to Presentation mode 156
Determining correct load limit 227
Digital compass 44
Digital Rights Management 169
Dimensions 260
Dimming the rearview mirror 41
Directory
  refer to Contacts 138
Display
  Cleaning 236
Disposal 256
Distance driven 15
Doors
  Mechanically unlocking and locking 24
Driver information system 12
  Energy consumers 15
  On-board computer 15
  Switching views 13
Drives
  refer to Media 169, 177
Drive select 96
Driving through water 75
Driving time 15
Driving tips
  Driving through water 75
  Efficient driving 75
Dust filter
  refer to Active combination filter 70
DVD drive (media drives) 170
Dynamic volume
  refer to System volume 193

E

E-mail 137
Economical route 156

OwnersManuals2.com

EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 105
EDR
refer to Event Data Recorder (EDR) 254
Electrical system 208
Electromechanical parking brake 80
Electronic Differential Lock 105
Electronic immobilizer 19
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
Indicator light 17
Sport mode 106
Emergency
refer to Making an emergency call 135
Emergency assistance 240
Emergency braking function 80
Emergency flashers 39
Emergency fueling 198
Emergency operation
Doors 24
Luggage compartment lid 26, 27
Power top 34
Emergency release
Selector lever 88
Emissions control system 198
Energy consumers 15
Energy management 110
Engine
Breaking in 75
Coolant 206
Jump starting 246
Start/Stop system 78
Starting 76, 77
Starting and stopping 76
Engine compartment
Opening and closing the hood 200
Overview 201
Safety precautions 199
Engine control (indicator light) 17
Engine data
refer to Sport displays 15
Engine oil
Adding 202
Changing 205
Checking oil level 202
Consumption 202
Dipstick 203
Indicator light 202
Replacement intervals 212
Temperature display 15
Type 202
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 80
Enhanced view 13
Entering characters/numbers (speller) 118
Entering letters (speller) 118
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 195
ESC
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
ESP
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 254
Exterior lighting 37
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 40
Dimming 41
Folding settings 23
Heating 40
External voice operation 128

F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface 190
Fader (sound) 193
Fast forwarding and rewinding (audio/video file) 177
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 177
Fast route 156
Favorites
Media 180
Navigation 151
Telephone 135
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 262
File formats (media drives) 183
Floor mat 46
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 37
Folding the rear seats 67
Footwell lighting 40

OwnersManuals2.com

For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 205
Fueling 196
Leaks 200
Free text search 119
Media 179
Navigation 150
Radio 165
Telephone 139
Freeze protection
Coolant 206
Frequency band 165, 167
also refer to Frequency band 165
Fuel 195
Additives 196
Current fuel consumption 15
Fuel display 10
Fuel gauge 12
Fuel tank capacity 260
Gasoline 195
Reducing fuel consumption 75
Saving fuel 97
Fueling
Fuel gauge 12
Fuel tank capacity 260
Opening the fuel filler door 196
With reserve canister (emergency fueling) . 198
Fuses
Assignment 252
Replacing 251

G

Garage door opener 29
Garment hooks 65
Gasoline 195
Additives 196
Gasoline mixture 195
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 261
Global commands (voice recognition system) 124
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 216
Glove compartment 65
G meter
refer to Sport displays 15
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 261
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 261
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 261

H

Hands-free 130
Hands Free Profile 130
Headlight range control system 37
Headlights 38
Cleaning 234
Headlight range control system 37
Washer system 42
Heated
Exterior mirrors 40
Rear window 72
Seats 72
Washer nozzles 42
Heating 70
Hex socket 240
HFP
refer to Hands Free Profile 129
Hill descent control 86
Hill hold assist 81
also refer to Hill hold assist 81
Home address 151, 155
HomeLink
refer to Garage door opener 29
Horn 6
Hotspot
refer to Wi-Fi 147, 173

I

Ignition (indicator light) 16
Imbalance (wheels) 222
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 19
Importing and exporting (contacts) 139
Indicator lights 7
Input
Using the MMI touch 113, 114
Using the speller 118
Input level (media) 180
Inspection interval
refer to Service interval display 212

OwnersManuals2.com

Instrument cluster 10
Cleaning 236
Malfunction 10
Messages 16
Operating 12
Service interval display 212
Switching tabs 12
Instruments
Adjusting the lighting 40
Interior lighting 40
Interior monitoring 24
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 42
Internet
refer to connect 142
Internet radio 174
iPod/iPhone
refer to Audi music interface 175

J

Joystick function (MMI) 116
Jukebox 171
Jump starting 246

K

Key 19
Convenience opening and closing 28
Key not recognized 78
Key replacement 19
Mechanical key 19, 20
Messages 77
Replacing the battery 20
Unlocking and locking 21, 22
Kick-down
Automatic transmission 87

L

Lap timer 92
also refer to Lap timer 92
LATCH (securing child safety seats) 61
Launch Control 87
Leather care and cleaning 237
Leaving home 39
License plate bracket 258
Licensing agreements (MMI) 194
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 244
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 37
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 42
Lighting
Changing bulbs 253
Exterior 37
Interior 40
Lights 37
Coming/Leaving home 39
Daytime running lights 37
Entry/exit lighting 39
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 37
Headlight flasher 38
Headlight range control system 37
Headlights 38
Interior/reading lights 40
Low beam headlights 37
Parking light 37
Switching daytime running lights on and off . 39
Listening to music
refer to Media 169, 177
Load 261
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 21
With the convenience key 22
Low beam headlights 37
Luggage compartment
Cover 67
Increasing the size 67
Power sources 64
Ski bag 67
Tie-downs 68
also refer to Luggage compartment 65
Luggage compartment lid 27
Mechanically unlocking 26, 27
Opening and closing 25
Opening from the inside in an emergency . . 27
Lumbar support 47

M

Maintenance 256
Maintenance intervals
refer to Service interval display 212
Making an emergency call 135
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 199

OwnersManuals2.com

Map
Display 162
Functions 159
Operating 158
Settings 160
Update 149
Mechanical key 19, 20
Media 169, 177
Drives 170
Supported formats 183
Media center 178
Memory capacity
Directory 139
Jukebox 171
Memory card
SD card reader 170
Supported types and formats 183
MENU button 111
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 189
Menu paths (Owner's Manual) 113
Menus and symbols 120
Messages 136
also refer to E-mail 137
Mirror compass 44
Mirrors
Adjusting the exterior mirrors 40
Dimming 41
Vanity mirror 42
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 111
MMI search
refer to Free text search 119, 179
MMI touch 113, 114
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 129
Mobile device reminder signal 189
Mobile hotspot
refer to Personal hotspot 143
MP3
refer to Jukebox 171
Multifunction steering wheel
Buttons 12, 14
Operating 12
Multi Media Interface 111
Music collection
refer to Jukebox 171
Mute 193
also refer to Muting 193
Muting 14
myAudi 144, 153

N

Natural leather care and cleaning 237
NAV/MAP button 149
Navigation 149
Announcements 157
Better route 163
also refer to Map 158
Navigation announcements 157
Neck heating 73
NHTSA 258

O

Octane rating (gasoline) 195
Odometer 11
Resetting 11
Oil
refer to Engine oil 202
On-board computer 15
On/Off knob (MMI) 111
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . 199, 254
Online destinations
refer to Point of interest search 153
Online map 161
Online media 174
Online services
refer to connect 142
Opening
Convenience opening 28
Fuel filler door 196
Hood 200
Luggage compartment lid 25
Windows 27
Opening and closing 21, 22
Operating
Instrument cluster 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Multi Media Interface 112
Voice recognition system 123

OwnersManuals2.com

Optional equipment number 260
Options menu 113, 116, 117
Overview (cockpit) 6

P

Paint code 260
Paint damage 235
PANIC button 21
PANIC function 21
Parental control 181
Parking aid 99
Cleaning the sensors/camera 235
Malfunction 103
Parking brake
Indicator light 16
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 80
Parking light 37
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 103
Cleaning the rearview camera 102
Parking system plus 100
Peripheral display 100
Rear parking system 99
Rearview camera 101
also refer to Parking aid 100, 101
Parking (automatic transmission) 84, 85
Pass-through 67
Pause (audio/video file) 14, 177
Perchlorate 256
Performance/torque display
refer to Sport displays 15
Peripheral display 100
Personal hotspot 143
Phonebook
refer to Contacts 138
Playback (media) 177
Playlist 180
Point of interest 152
Point of interest search 153
also refer to Point of interest 152
Polishing 235
Pollen filter
refer to Active combination filter 70
Power
Seat adjustment 47
Power sources 64, 131, 175
Power top 32
Cleaning 235
Closing 32
Convenience closing 33
Convenience opening 33
Emergency operation 34
General information 32
Malfunction 33
Messages 33
Opening 32
Wind deflector 34
Power windows 27
Malfunction 28
Presentation mode 156
Presets (radio) 167
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 231
Tires 224
Programming (steering wheel button) 14
Protecting 235
Pyrotechnic elements 256

Q

quattro 109

R

Radio 165
Additional station information 166
Presets 167
Radio text 166
Radio communications equipment 258
Radio equipment 258
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 262
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 37
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 42
Random
refer to Shuffle 180
Range 15
Reading lights 40
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 25
Rear seats 49
Rear spoiler 109
Cleaning 235

OwnersManuals2.com

Rearview camera
refer to Parking aid 100, 101
Rearview mirror dimming 41
Rear window defogger 72
Recirculation mode 71
Recuperation 15
Refrigerant oil 261
Refueling 196
Fuel filler door emergency release 198
Remote control
Garage door opener 29
Remote control key 19
Convenience opening and closing 28
Key replacement 19
LED 20
Mechanical key 20
Personalization 19
Replacing the battery 20
Unlocking and locking 21
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 243
Removing the wheel hub covers 243
Repairs 256
Replacement key 19
Replacement parts 258
Replacing the battery
12 volt vehicle battery 209
Vehicle key 20
Replacing windshield wiper blades 43
Reporting Safety Defects 258
Reset
refer to Restart (MMI) 194
Restart (MMI) 194
Reverse (automatic transmission) 82
Rewinding (audio/video file) 177
Rims 228
Cleaning 235
Ringtone settings 140
Rolling ability
Electromechanical parking brake 80
Transmission idle 82
Roof load 261
Roof rack 69
also refer to Roof rack 69
Route criteria 156
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 149
Running direction (tires) 245

S

Safety
Telephone 129
Safety belt microphone 141
Safety belts 50
Cleaning 236
Locking 62
Securing child safety seats 61
Saving fuel
Energy consumers 15
Recuperation 15
Scan (radio) 166
Screwdriver 240
SD card reader 170
SDS
refer to Voice recognition system 123
Search
refer to Free text search 119, 179
Search area (point of interest) 152
Search function
refer to Free text search 119, 179
Searching for an entry 120
Seat heating 72
Seats
Adjusting 47
Adjusting the rear seats 49
Cleaning 236
Easy seat entry 48
Folding 67
Secondary phone 130, 190
Selecting a source (media) 177
Selection menu 113, 116, 117
Selective door unlocking 18
Selective wheel torque control 105
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency operation 88
Position 82
Service interval
refer to Service interval display 212
Service interval display 212
Settings
Directory 140
Map 160
Media 180

OwnersManuals2.com

Navigation 156
Radio 168
System (MMI) 189
Telephone 140
Voice recognition system 190
Wi-Fi hotspot 147
Setting the language 189
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 86
Shuffle 180
Side assist 94
Adjusting the brightness 96
Cleaning the sensors 235
Sensor range 94
Switching on and off 96
also refer to Side assist 94
SIM card reader 143
Ski bag 67
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 129
Snow chains 229
Socket
refer to Power sources 64
Software update
refer to System update (MMI) 192
Software (MMI)
Licensing agreements 194
Update 192
Version 192
Spare tire 246
Speed dependent volume control 193
Speedometer 10
Speed warning system 90
Speller 118
Sport displays 15
Sport mode 106
Sport view 13
Stabilization program
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 105
Start/Stop system 78
Engine does not switch off 79
Engine starts automatically 79
Indicator lights 78
Messages 80
Stopping and starting the engine 78
Switching off and on 80
START ENGINE STOP button 76
Starting to drive 81
Starting (engine) 76
Steering 108
Indicator light 16
also refer to Steering 108
Steering wheel
Adjusting 49
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 86
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 12, 14
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 227
Stopover (navigation) 154
Storage areas 65
Streaming
refer to Online media 174
S tronic (automatic transmission) 82
Subtitles (DVD) 180
Sun visors 42
Suspension control 97
Swapping calls 134
Switching daytime running lights on and off . 39
Switching the ignition on 76
Symbols 120
Navigation 158
Traffic 162
also refer to Indicator lights 7
System settings (MMI) 189
System update (MMI) 192
System volume 193

T

Tachometer 10, 11
Technical data 260
Technical modifications 256
Telephone 129
Audi phone box 131
Connecting a mobile phone 129
Dialing a number 133
Options during a phone call 134
Playing music 172
Settings 140
Temperature display
Outside temperature 11
Temperature gauge
Coolant 10

OwnersManuals2.com

Tethering
refer to Personal hotspot 143
Text messages 136
also refer to Text messages 136
Tie-downs 68
Tightening specification
Wheel bolts 245
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 245
Time 189
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 86
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 240
Tires 213
Labeling 214
Load index 214
Low-profile tires 229
Manufacture date 214
Repair set 240
Replacing 242
Service life 222
Speed rating 214
Tire pressure 224
Tire pressure monitoring system 230, 231
Tire pressure table 225
Treadwear indicators 222
Unidirectional 215, 245
Uniform tire quality grading 229
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 216
Tires and vehicle load limits 226
Tone (sound)
refer to Adjusting the sound 193
Tools 240
Top tether anchor (securing the child safety seat) 63
Touch
refer to MMI touch 113, 114
Towing 248
Towing loop 249, 250
Towing protection monitoring 24
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 231
Traffic information 162
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 87
Treble (sound) 193
Turn signals 38

U

Uniform tire quality grading 229
Unlocking and locking
By remote control 21
Using the lock cylinder 24
With the central locking switch 23
With the convenience key 22
Updating stations (radio) 165
USB port 64
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 175

V

Vanity mirror 42
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 233
Dimensions 260
Identification data 260
Out of service 239
Raising 244
Unlocking and locking 21
Vehicle battery
Charge level 110
Vehicle care 233
Vehicle data label 260
Vehicle Identification Number 260
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
refer to Vehicle Identification Number . . . 260
Vehicle jack 240, 246
Lifting points 244
Vehicle tool kit 240
Ventilation 70
Version information 192
VIEW button 12
VIN
refer to Vehicle Identification Number . . . 260
Voice guidance
refer to Multifunction steering wheel . . 12, 14
Voicemail 138
Voice recognition system 14, 123
Commands 124
External 128
Operating 123
Settings 190
Volume 194

OwnersManuals2.com

Volume 193
Multifunction steering wheel 14
Voice recognition system 14

W

Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 7
Washing matte finish paint 233
Wave band
refer to Frequency band 165
Weights 261
Wheel bolts 228
anti-theft 243
Removing the cover 243
Tightening specification 245
Wheels 213
Changing 245
Cleaning 235
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 216
Replacing 242
Tire pressure monitoring system 231
Tires and vehicle load limits 226
Wheel wrench 240
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 173
Audio player 173
Hotspot settings 147
Online media 174
Personal hotspot 143
Using a hotspot 144
also refer to Wi-Fi 147, 173
Wind deflector 34
Windows
Cleaning and removing ice 236
Convenience opening and closing 28
Defrosting 72
Opening and closing 27
Power windows 27
Windshield
Cleaning 42
Defrosting 72
also refer to Windshield 42
Windshield washer system 42, 211
Reservoir capacity 260
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 43
Folding up 43
Replacing windshield wiper blades 43
Switching on and off 42
Winter operation
Battery 209
Car washes 233
Cooling system 206
Defrosting the windows 72
Removing ice from windows 236
Seat heating 72
Snow chains 229
Tires 228
Windshield washer system 211
Winter tires 228

X

Xenon headlights 37

Z

Zoom (map) 13, 151, 158

OwnersManuals2.com

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

OwnersManuals2.com

Owner's Manual
English North America 06.2022
8S1012721BH



8S1012721BH

www.audi.com

OwnersManuals2.com